Calculus-II

DR. AIJAZ AHMAD MALLA

and

DR. REWAN UL SHABAN

January 2025

PREFACE

This textbook, "Calculus II: A Comprehensive Guide," is designed for second-semester undergraduate students pursuing a major in Mathematics, specifically tailored to the MMT223J syllabus. Building upon the foundational concepts of differential calculus, this volume delves deep into the world of integral calculus, its diverse applications, and an introduction to differential equations and special functions.

The primary objectives of this book are twofold: first, to foster a thorough understanding of the core principles of integral calculus and equip students with the technical skills to apply these techniques in various scientific and engineering disciplines. Second, it aims to build a solid mathematical foundation that prepares students for more advanced courses in analysis and applied mathematics.

The structure of this book meticulously follows the prescribed syllabus, divided into two main parts: Theory and Tutorial. The "Theory" part covers the integration of rational and irrational functions, reduction formulae, definite integrals, and their application in finding areas, volumes, and lengths of curves. The "Tutorial" part introduces fundamental concepts of linear differential equations and the elegant properties of Beta and Gamma functions.

Each chapter is designed to be self-contained, presenting concepts in a clear, logical sequence. We believe that the techniques detailed herein will not only enable students to solve complex problems but also to appreciate the power and beauty of calculus as a tool for understanding the world around us. We hope this book serves as an invaluable resource for both students and instructors on their mathematical journey.

Dr. Aijaz Ahmad Malla
Dr. Rezwan ul Shaban

Contents

LIST OF FIGURES

Chapter 1

TECHNIQUES OF INTEGRATION

While your initial study of calculus provided tools for integrating basic functions, many integrals encountered in science, engineering, and higher mathematics are not so straightforward. This unit introduces powerful and systematic techniques to tackle more complex integrands. We will begin with the method of **partial fractions**, a purely algebraic process that transforms complicated rational functions into sums of simpler, integrable ones. We will then extend our toolkit to handle various **irrational functions** and specific trigonometric forms that require clever substitutions. Mastering these methods is fundamental to unlocking a wider range of problems in calculus and its applications.

A Review of Basic Integration Techniques

Before we delve into the more advanced methods of this unit, it is essential to have a firm grasp of the fundamental integration techniques. This section serves as a brief review of the prerequisite concepts.

1. The Power Rule and Standard Formulas

The most basic integration rule is the reverse of the power rule for differentiation. For any real number $n \neq -1$:

$$\int x^n \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C$$

In the special case where $n = -1$:

$$\int x^{-1} \, dx = \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx = \ln|x| + C$$

Remember to always include the constant of integration, C, for indefinite integrals. This foundation extends to other standard functions:

- $\int e^x \, dx = e^x + C$

- $\int \cos(x)\,dx = \sin(x) + C$
- $\int \sin(x)\,dx = -\cos(x) + C$
- $\int \sec^2(x)\,dx = \tan(x) + C$

2. Linearity of the Integral

The integral operator is linear. This means you can integrate a sum of functions term-by-term and pull constant multiples out of the integral:

$$\int [af(x) \pm bg(x)]\,dx = a\int f(x)\,dx \pm b\int g(x)\,dx$$

Example:

$$\int (3x^2 - 4\sec^2(x))\,dx = 3\int x^2\,dx - 4\int \sec^2(x)\,dx = 3\left(\frac{x^3}{3}\right) - 4(\tan(x)) + C = x^3 - 4\tan(x) + C$$

3. The Method of Substitution (u-Substitution)

Substitution is the reverse of the chain rule and is one of the most powerful integration techniques. The goal is to transform a complex integral into a simpler one by changing the variable of integration. The formula is:

$$\int f(g(x))g'(x)\,dx = \int f(u)\,du \quad \text{where } u = g(x)$$

The key is to identify a composite function $f(g(x))$ and the derivative of the inner function, $g'(x)$.

Example: Find $\int 2x\cos(x^2)\,dx$.

1. Let $u = x^2$.
2. Then $du = 2x\,dx$.
3. Substitute u and du into the integral: $\int \cos(u)\,du$.
4. Integrate with respect to u: $\sin(u) + C$.
5. Substitute back for x: $\sin(x^2) + C$.

4. Integration by Parts

Integration by Parts is the reverse of the product rule and is used to integrate products of functions. The formula is:

$$\int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du$$

The choice of u and dv is crucial. A helpful mnemonic for choosing u is **ILATE**:

- **I**nverse trigonometric functions (
  $sin^{-1}x, \tan^{-1}x$)

- **L**ogarithmic functions ($\ln x$)
- **A**lgebraic functions ($x^2, x^3 + 1$)
- **T**rigonometric functions ($\sin x, \cos x$)
- **E**xponential functions (e^x)

You should choose u as the function that comes first in this list.

Example: Find $\int xe^x\,dx$.

1. Following ILATE, choose $u = x$ (Algebraic) and $dv = e^x\,dx$ (Exponential).
2. Differentiate u to get du: $du = dx$.
3. Integrate dv to get v: $v = \int e^x\,dx = e^x$.
4. Apply the formula:
$$\int xe^x\,dx = xe^x - \int e^x\,dx$$
5. Solve the remaining integral:
$$xe^x - e^x + C$$

1.1 Standard Cases of Partial Fractions

Partial fraction decomposition is an algebraic technique for rewriting a complex **rational function** (a ratio of two polynomials) as a sum of simpler, more easily integrable fractions.

A rational function is of the form $R(x) = \dfrac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$, where $P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ are polynomials.

- The function is **proper** if the degree of the numerator $P(x)$ is less than the degree of the denominator $Q(x)$.
- The function is **improper** if the degree of $P(x)$ is greater than or equal to the degree of $Q(x)$.

The method of partial fractions applies only to **proper** rational functions. If you start with an improper rational function, you must first perform polynomial long division to rewrite it as a polynomial plus a proper rational function.

Prerequisite: Polynomial Long Division

Before we proceed, let's review the necessary first step for improper rational functions.

Example 1.1

Dealing with an Improper Rational Function: Decompose the improper rational function $\dfrac{x^3 + x}{x^2 - 1}$.

Solution: Since the degree of the numerator (3) is greater than the degree of the denominator (2), we perform long division:

$$
\begin{array}{r|l}
 & \qquad\qquad x \\ \hline
x^2 - 1 & x^3 + 0x^2 + x \\
 & \quad -(x^3 - x) \\ \hline
 & \qquad\qquad 2x
\end{array}
$$

The result is a quotient of x and a remainder of $2x$. Therefore, we can write:

$$\frac{x^3 + x}{x^2 - 1} = \underbrace{x}_{\text{Polynomial}} + \underbrace{\frac{2x}{x^2 - 1}}_{\text{Proper Rational Function}}$$

We would then apply partial fraction decomposition to the proper rational function $\frac{2x}{x^2 - 1}$.

1.1.1 The Four Cases for Proper Rational Functions

The form of the partial fraction decomposition of $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$ depends entirely on the factors of the denominator, $Q(x)$.

Case 1: Distinct Linear Factors

If the denominator $Q(x)$ can be factored into distinct linear factors, such as $(a_1x + b_1)(a_2x + b_2) \cdots (a_kx + b_k)$, then the decomposition takes the form:

$$\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} = \frac{A_1}{a_1x + b_1} + \frac{A_2}{a_2x + b_2} + \cdots + \frac{A_k}{a_kx + b_k}$$

where $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_k$ are constants to be determined.

Example 1.2

Distinct Linear Factors: Find the partial fraction decomposition of $\frac{5x - 3}{x^2 - 2x - 3}$.

Hence,evaluate $\int \frac{5x - 3}{x^2 - 2x - 3} dx$.

Solution: First, factor the denominator: $x^2 - 2x - 3 = (x - 3)(x + 1)$. The factors are distinct and linear. So the decomposition is:

$$\frac{5x - 3}{(x - 3)(x + 1)} = \frac{A}{x - 3} + \frac{B}{x + 1}$$

To find the constants, multiply both sides by the common denominator $(x - 3)(x + 1)$:

$$5x - 3 = A(x + 1) + B(x - 3)$$

Method 1: Equating Coefficients. Expand the right side: $5x - 3 = Ax + A + Bx - 3B = (A + B)x + (A - 3B)$.

$$\text{Coefficients of } x: \quad 5 = A + B$$
$$\text{Constant terms:} \quad -3 = A - 3B$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first gives $8 = 4B$, so $B = 2$. Substituting back, $A = 5 - B = 5 - 2 = 3$. Thus, $A = 3$.

Method 2: Heaviside "Cover-Up" Method. This is a faster method for distinct linear factors. In the equation $5x - 3 = A(x + 1) + B(x - 3)$:

- To find A, let $x = 3$ (the root of its denominator):

$$5(3) - 3 = A(3 + 1) + B(3 - 3) \implies 12 = 4A \implies A = 3$$

- To find B, let $x = -1$ (the root of its denominator):

$$5(-1) - 3 = A(-1 + 1) + B(-1 - 3) \implies -8 = -4B \implies B = 2$$

Both methods yield $A = 3$ and $B = 2$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{5x - 3}{(x - 3)(x + 1)} = \frac{3}{x - 3} + \frac{2}{x + 1}$$

The integral would then be $\int \left(\frac{3}{x - 3} + \frac{2}{x + 1}\right) dx = 3 \ln|x - 3| + 2 \ln|x + 1| + C$.

Example 1.3

(Three Distinct Linear Factors) Integrate $\dfrac{x^2 + 2x - 1}{2x^3 + 3x^2 - 2x}$.

Solution: Factor the denominator: $2x^3 + 3x^2 - 2x = x(2x^2 + 3x - 2) = x(2x - 1)(x + 2)$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{x^2 + 2x - 1}{x(2x - 1)(x + 2)} = \frac{A}{x} + \frac{B}{2x - 1} + \frac{C}{x + 2}$$

Multiply by the common denominator:

$$x^2 + 2x - 1 = A(2x - 1)(x + 2) + Bx(x + 2) + Cx(2x - 1)$$

Using the cover-up method:

- Let $x = 0$: $-1 = A(-1)(2) \implies -1 = -2A \implies A = \frac{1}{2}$
- Let $x = \frac{1}{2}$: $(\frac{1}{2})^2 + 2(\frac{1}{2}) - 1 = B(\frac{1}{2})(\frac{1}{2} + 2) \implies \frac{1}{4} = B(\frac{1}{2})(\frac{5}{2}) \implies \frac{1}{4} = \frac{5}{4}B \implies B = \frac{1}{5}$

✽ Let $x = -2$: $(-2)^2 + 2(-2) - 1 = C(-2)(2(-2) - 1) \implies -1 = C(-2)(-5) \implies -1 = 10C \implies C = -\dfrac{1}{10}$

So, the decomposition is:

$$\frac{1/2}{x} + \frac{1/5}{2x-1} - \frac{1/10}{x+2}$$

The integral would then be

$$\int \frac{1/2}{x}dx + \int \frac{1/5}{2x-1}dx - \int \frac{1/10}{x+2}dx = \frac{1}{2}\ln|x| + \frac{1}{10}\ln|2x-1| - \frac{1}{10}\ln|x+2| + C$$

Example 1.4

Evaluate the integral $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x^2-4}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: First, factor the denominator: $x^2 - 4 = (x-2)(x+2)$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{1}{(x-2)(x+2)} = \frac{A}{x-2} + \frac{B}{x+2}$$

Multiplying by the common denominator gives $1 = A(x+2) + B(x-2)$.

✽ Let $x = 2$: $1 = A(4) \implies A = 1/4$.

✽ Let $x = -2$: $1 = B(-4) \implies B = -1/4$.

So, $\dfrac{1}{x^2-4} = \dfrac{1/4}{x-2} - \dfrac{1/4}{x+2}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{1}{x^2-4}\,dx &= \int \left(\frac{1/4}{x-2} - \frac{1/4}{x+2}\right) dx \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\int \frac{1}{x-2}\,dx - \frac{1}{4}\int \frac{1}{x+2}\,dx \\
&= \frac{1}{4}\ln|x-2| - \frac{1}{4}\ln|x+2| + C
\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.5

Evaluate the integral $\displaystyle\int \frac{3x+11}{x^2+x-6}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: Factor the denominator: $x^2 + x - 6 = (x+3)(x-2)$.

$$\frac{3x+11}{(x+3)(x-2)} = \frac{A}{x+3} + \frac{B}{x-2}$$

Multiplying gives $3x + 11 = A(x-2) + B(x+3)$.

✽ Let $x = -3$: $3(-3) + 11 = A(-5) \implies 2 = -5A \implies A = -2/5$.

✽ Let $x = 2$: $3(2) + 11 = B(5) \implies 17 = 5B \implies B = 17/5$.

So, $\frac{3x+11}{x^2+x-6} = \frac{-2/5}{x+3} + \frac{17/5}{x-2}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{3x+11}{x^2+x-6}\,dx &= \int \left(\frac{-2/5}{x+3} + \frac{17/5}{x-2}\right) dx \\ &= -\frac{2}{5}\ln|x+3| + \frac{17}{5}\ln|x-2| + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.6

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{x^2+1}{x^3-x}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: Factor the denominator: $x^3 - x = x(x^2-1) = x(x-1)(x+1)$.

$$\frac{x^2+1}{x(x-1)(x+1)} = \frac{A}{x} + \frac{B}{x-1} + \frac{C}{x+1}$$

Multiplying gives $x^2 + 1 = A(x-1)(x+1) + Bx(x+1) + Cx(x-1)$.

✽ Let $x = 0$: $1 = A(-1)(1) \implies A = -1$.

✽ Let $x = 1$: $2 = B(1)(2) \implies B = 1$.

✽ Let $x = -1$: $2 = C(-1)(-2) \implies C = 1$.

So, $\frac{x^2+1}{x^3-x} = -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{x+1}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{x^2+1}{x^3-x}\,dx &= \int \left(-\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{x+1}\right) dx \\ &= -\ln|x| + \ln|x-1| + \ln|x+1| + C\end{aligned}$$

Case 2: Repeated Linear Factors

If a linear factor $(ax+b)$ is repeated k times in the denominator, i.e., you have a term $(ax+b)^k$, then the decomposition must include a term for each power of that factor from 1 to k:

$$\frac{A_1}{ax+b} + \frac{A_2}{(ax+b)^2} + \cdots + \frac{A_k}{(ax+b)^k}$$

Example 1.7

(Repeated Linear Factors) Integrate $\dfrac{x^2-5x+16}{(x-3)(x-2)^2}$.

Solution: The denominator has a distinct linear factor $x-3$ and a repeated linear factor $(x-2)^2$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{x^2-5x+16}{(x-3)(x-2)^2} = \frac{A}{x-3} + \frac{B}{x-2} + \frac{C}{(x-2)^2}$$

Multiply by the common denominator:

$$x^2-5x+16 = A(x-2)^2 + B(x-3)(x-2) + C(x-3)$$

We can find A and C easily using the cover-up method:

- Let $x=3$: $(3)^2-5(3)+16 = A(3-2)^2 \implies 9-15+16 = A(1)^2 \implies 10 = A$
- Let $x=2$: $(2)^2-5(2)+16 = C(2-3) \implies 4-10+16 = C(-1) \implies 10 = -C \implies C = -10$

To find B, we can substitute the values of A and C and pick another value for x, like $x=0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
(0)^2-5(0)+16 &= A(0-2)^2 + B(0-3)(0-2) + C(0-3)\\
16 &= A(-2)^2 + B(-3)(-2) + C(-3)\\
16 &= 4A + 6B - 3C\\
16 &= 4(10) + 6B - 3(-10)\\
16 &= 40 + 6B + 30\\
16 &= 70 + 6B\\
-54 &= 6B \implies B = -9
\end{aligned}$$

The decomposition is:

$$\frac{10}{x-3} - \frac{9}{x-2} - \frac{10}{(x-2)^2}$$

Hence, the integral is

$$\int \frac{10}{x-3}dx - \int \frac{9}{x-2}dx - \int \frac{10}{(x-2)^2}dx = 10\ln|x-3| - 9\ln|x-2| + \frac{10}{(x-2)} + C$$

Example 1.8

Evaluate the integral $\displaystyle\int \frac{2x-1}{x(x-1)^2}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\frac{A}{x} + \frac{B}{x-1} + \frac{C}{(x-1)^2}$. Multiplying gives $2x - 1 = A(x-1)^2 + Bx(x-1) + Cx$.

✽ Let $x = 0$: $-1 = A(-1)^2 \implies A = -1$.

✽ Let $x = 1$: $1 = C(1) \implies C = 1$.

✽ Let $x = 2$: $3 = A(1)^2 + B(2)(1) + C(2) \implies 3 = (-1) + 2B + (1)(2) \implies 3 = 1 + 2B \implies B = 1$.

So, $\frac{2x-1}{x(x-1)^2} = -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{(x-1)^2}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}\int\left(-\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{(x-1)^2}\right)dx &= -\ln|x| + \ln|x-1| + \int (x-1)^{-2}\,dx \\ &= -\ln|x| + \ln|x-1| - \frac{1}{x-1} + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.9

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{x^2}{(x+2)^3}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: A simple substitution is faster. Let $u = x + 2$, so $x = u - 2$.

$$\frac{x^2}{(x+2)^3} = \frac{(u-2)^2}{u^3} = \frac{u^2 - 4u + 4}{u^3} = \frac{1}{u} - \frac{4}{u^2} + \frac{4}{u^3}$$

Substituting back: $\frac{1}{x+2} - \frac{4}{(x+2)^2} + \frac{4}{(x+2)^3}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}\int\left(\frac{1}{x+2} - \frac{4}{(x+2)^2} + \frac{4}{(x+2)^3}\right)dx &= \ln|x+2| - 4\frac{(x+2)^{-1}}{-1} + 4\frac{(x+2)^{-2}}{-2} + C \\ &= \ln|x+2| + \frac{4}{x+2} - \frac{2}{(x+2)^2} + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.10

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{3x^2 + x + 2}{(x-1)(x+1)^2}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\frac{A}{x-1} + \frac{B}{x+1} + \frac{C}{(x+1)^2}$. Multiplying gives $3x^2 + x + 2 = A(x+1)^2 + B(x-1)(x+1) + C(x-1)$.

✿ Let $x = 1$: $3 + 1 + 2 = A(2)^2 \implies 6 = 4A \implies A = 3/2$.

✿ Let $x = -1$: $3 - 1 + 2 = C(-2) \implies 4 = -2C \implies C = -2$.

✿ Let $x = 0$: $2 = A(1)^2 + B(-1)(1) + C(-1) \implies 2 = A - B - C \implies 2 = \frac{3}{2} - B - (-2) \implies B = \frac{3}{2}$.

So, $\dfrac{3x^2 + x + 2}{(x-1)(x+1)^2} = \dfrac{3/2}{x-1} + \dfrac{3/2}{x+1} - \dfrac{2}{(x+1)^2}$.

Integration:

$$\int \left(\frac{3/2}{x-1} + \frac{3/2}{x+1} - \frac{2}{(x+1)^2} \right) dx = \frac{3}{2} \ln|x-1| + \frac{3}{2} \ln|x+1| - 2\frac{(x+1)^{-1}}{-1} + C$$
$$= \frac{3}{2} \ln|x^2 - 1| + \frac{2}{x+1} + C$$

Case 3: Distinct Irreducible Quadratic Factors

If the denominator contains a quadratic factor $ax^2 + bx + c$ that cannot be factored into linear factors with real coefficients (i.e., $b^2 - 4ac < 0$), this is an **irreducible quadratic factor**. For each such factor, the decomposition includes a term of the form:

$$\frac{Ax + B}{ax^2 + bx + c}$$

The numerator must be a linear polynomial (one degree less than the quadratic denominator).

Example 1.11

(Irreducible Quadratic Factor) Decompose $\dfrac{2x^2 - x + 4}{x^3 + 4x}$.

Solution: Factor the denominator: $x^3 + 4x = x(x^2 + 4)$. The factor $x^2 + 4$ is irreducible because the roots of $x^2 + 4 = 0$ are complex. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{2x^2 - x + 4}{x(x^2 + 4)} = \frac{A}{x} + \frac{Bx + C}{x^2 + 4}$$

Multiply by the common denominator:

$$2x^2 - x + 4 = A(x^2 + 4) + (Bx + C)x$$

$$2x^2 - x + 4 = Ax^2 + 4A + Bx^2 + Cx$$
$$2x^2 - x + 4 = (A + B)x^2 + Cx + 4A$$

Now, equate coefficients:

$$\text{Coefficients of } x^2: \quad 2 = A + B$$

$$\text{Coefficients of } x: \quad -1 = C$$
$$\text{Constant terms:} \quad 4 = 4A \implies A = 1$$

Substitute $A = 1$ into the first equation: $2 = 1 + B \implies B = 1$. So, $A = 1, B = 1, C = -1$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{1}{x} + \frac{x-1}{x^2+4}$$

The integral would be $\int \left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{x}{x^2+4} - \frac{1}{x^2+4}\right) dx$, which evaluates to $\ln|x| + \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+4) - \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}(\frac{x}{2}) + C$.

Example 1.12

Two Irreducible Quadratic Factors: Decompose $\frac{1}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)}$.

Solution: Both factors are distinct and irreducible. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{1}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)} = \frac{Ax+B}{x^2+1} + \frac{Cx+D}{x^2+4}$$

Multiply by the denominator:

$$1 = (Ax+B)(x^2+4) + (Cx+D)(x^2+1)$$

$$1 = Ax^3 + 4Ax + Bx^2 + 4B + Cx^3 + Cx + Dx^2 + D$$
$$1 = (A+C)x^3 + (B+D)x^2 + (4A+C)x + (4B+D)$$

Equating coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned} x^3: &\quad A + C = 0 \implies C = -A \\ x^2: &\quad B + D = 0 \implies D = -B \\ x: &\quad 4A + C = 0 \\ \text{const}: &\quad 4B + D = 1 \end{aligned}$$

Substitute $C = -A$ into the third equation: $4A - A = 0 \implies 3A = 0 \implies A = 0$. Therefore, $C = 0$. Substitute $D = -B$ into the fourth equation: $4B - B = 1 \implies 3B = 1 \implies B = 1/3$. Therefore, $D = -1/3$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{1/3}{x^2+1} - \frac{1/3}{x^2+4}$$

Therefore,

$$\int \frac{1}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)}dx = \int \frac{1/3}{x^2+1}dx \int -\frac{1/3}{x^2+4}dx = 1/3\tan^{-1}x - 1/6\tan^{-1}(x/2) + C$$

Example 1.13

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{2x}{(x-1)(x^2+1)}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\frac{A}{x-1} + \frac{Bx+C}{x^2+1}$. Multiplying gives $2x = A(x^2+1) + (Bx+C)(x-1)$.

- Let $x = 1$: $2 = A(2) \implies A = 1$.
- Expand: $2x = (A+B)x^2 + (-B+C)x + (A-C)$.
- Equate coefficients: $A + B = 0 \implies B = -1$. $A - C = 0 \implies C = A = 1$.

So, $\frac{2x}{(x-1)(x^2+1)} = \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{-x+1}{x^2+1}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \left(\frac{1}{x-1} - \frac{x}{x^2+1} + \frac{1}{x^2+1}\right) dx &= \ln|x-1| - \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{2x}{x^2+1}dx + \int \frac{1}{x^2+1}dx \\ &= \ln|x-1| - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+1) + \tan^{-1}(x) + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.14

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{8}{(x^2+1)(x^2+9)}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\frac{Ax+B}{x^2+1} + \frac{Cx+D}{x^2+9}$. Multiplying gives $8 = (Ax+B)(x^2+9) + (Cx+D)(x^2+1)$. By symmetry, A and C are zero. So $8 = B(x^2+9) + D(x^2+1)$.

- Coefficients of x^2: $0 = B + D \implies D = -B$.
- Constant terms: $8 = 9B + D \implies 8 = 9B - B \implies 8 = 8B \implies B = 1$. Thus $D = -1$.

So, $\frac{8}{(x^2+1)(x^2+9)} = \frac{1}{x^2+1} - \frac{1}{x^2+9}$.

Integration:

$$\int \left(\frac{1}{x^2+1} - \frac{1}{x^2+9}\right) dx = \tan^{-1}(x) - \frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{3}\right) + C$$

Example 1.15

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{1}{x(x^2+x+1)}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\frac{A}{x} + \frac{Bx+C}{x^2+x+1}$. Multiplying gives $1 = A(x^2+x+1) + (Bx+C)x$.

✽ Let $x = 0$: $1 = A(1) \implies A = 1$.

✽ Expand: $1 = (A+B)x^2 + (A+C)x + A$.

✽ Equate coefficients: $A + B = 0 \implies B = -1$. $A + C = 0 \implies C = -1$.

So, $\frac{1}{x(x^2+x+1)} = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \left(\frac{1}{x} - \frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}\right) dx &= \ln|x| - \int \frac{x+1/2}{x^2+x+1} dx - \int \frac{1/2}{(x+1/2)^2+3/4} dx \\
&= \ln|x| - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+x+1) - \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}/2}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x+1/2}{\sqrt{3}/2}\right) + C \\
&= \ln|x| - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+x+1) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + C
\end{aligned}$$

Case 4: Repeated Irreducible Quadratic Factors

If an irreducible quadratic factor $(ax^2 + bx + c)$ is repeated k times, then the decomposition must include k terms:

$$\frac{A_1x+B_1}{ax^2+bx+c} + \frac{A_2x+B_2}{(ax^2+bx+c)^2} + \cdots + \frac{A_kx+B_k}{(ax^2+bx+c)^k}$$

Example 1.16

(Repeated Irreducible Quadratic Factor) Decompose $\frac{x^3-x^2+2x-1}{(x^2+1)^2}$.

Solution: The factor $x^2 + 1$ is irreducible and repeated twice. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{x^3-x^2+2x-1}{(x^2+1)^2} = \frac{Ax+B}{x^2+1} + \frac{Cx+D}{(x^2+1)^2}$$

Multiply by the denominator $(x^2 + 1)^2$:

$$x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1 = (Ax+B)(x^2+1) + (Cx+D)$$

$$x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1 = Ax^3 + Ax + Bx^2 + B + Cx + D$$

$$x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1 = Ax^3 + Bx^2 + (A+C)x + (B+D)$$

Equating coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned}
x^3 &: \quad A = 1 \\
x^2 &: \quad B = -1
\end{aligned}$$

$$x: \quad A + C = 2 \implies 1 + C = 2 \implies C = 1$$
$$\text{const}: \quad B + D = -1 \implies -1 + D = -1 \implies D = 0$$

So, $A = 1, B = -1, C = 1, D = 0$. The decomposition is:

$$\frac{x-1}{x^2+1} + \frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\int \left(\frac{x-1}{x^2+1} + \frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2} \right) dx &= \int \frac{x}{x^2+1}\, dx - \int \frac{1}{x^2+1}\, dx + \int \frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2}\, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2+1) - \tan^{-1}(x) - \frac{1}{2(x^2+1)} + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.17

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{x^3}{(x^2+1)^2}\, dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\frac{Ax+B}{x^2+1} + \frac{Cx+D}{(x^2+1)^2}$. Multiplying gives $x^3 = (Ax+B)(x^2+1) + (Cx+D)$. Expanding gives $x^3 = Ax^3 + Bx^2 + (A+C)x + (B+D)$.

- Coefficients of x^3: $A = 1$.
- Coefficients of x^2: $B = 0$.
- Coefficients of x: $A + C = 0 \implies C = -1$.
- Constant terms: $B + D = 0 \implies D = 0$.

So, $\frac{x^3}{(x^2+1)^2} = \frac{x}{x^2+1} - \frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2}$.

Integration:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \left(\frac{x}{x^2+1} - \frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2} \right) dx &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2x}{x^2+1} dx - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2x}{(x^2+1)^2} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2+1) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{(x^2+1)^{-1}}{-1} + C \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2+1) + \frac{1}{2(x^2+1)} + C\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.18

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)^2}\, dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\dfrac{Ax+B}{x^2+1}+\dfrac{Cx+D}{(x^2+1)^2}$. Multiplying gives $x^2=(Ax+B)(x^2+1)+(Cx+D)$. Expanding gives $x^2=Ax^3+Bx^2+(A+C)x+(B+D)$.

✽ Coefficients of x^3: $A=0$.

✽ Coefficients of x^2: $B=1$.

✽ Coefficients of x: $A+C=0 \implies C=0$.

✽ Constant terms: $B+D=0 \implies D=-1$.

So, $\dfrac{x^2}{(x^2+1)^2}=\dfrac{1}{x^2+1}-\dfrac{1}{(x^2+1)^2}$.

Integration: The first term is $\int \dfrac{1}{x^2+1}dx=\tan^{-1}(x)$. For the second term, use trig substitution $x=\tan\theta$, $dx=\sec^2\theta d\theta$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{1}{(x^2+1)^2}dx &= \int \frac{\sec^2\theta}{(\tan^2\theta+1)^2}d\theta=\int \frac{\sec^2\theta}{(\sec^2\theta)^2}d\theta=\int \cos^2\theta d\theta\\ &= \int \frac{1+\cos(2\theta)}{2}d\theta=\frac{1}{2}\theta+\frac{1}{4}\sin(2\theta)=\frac{1}{2}\theta+\frac{1}{2}\sin\theta\cos\theta\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}(x)+\frac{1}{2}\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}=\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}(x)+\frac{x}{2(x^2+1)}\end{aligned}$$

Combining the results:

$$\int \frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)^2}dx=\tan^{-1}(x)-\left(\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}(x)+\frac{x}{2(x^2+1)}\right)+C=\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}(x)-\frac{x}{2(x^2+1)}+C$$

Example 1.19

Evaluate the integral $\int \dfrac{1}{x(x^2+1)^2}\,dx$.

Solution:

Decomposition: The form is $\dfrac{A}{x}+\dfrac{Bx+C}{x^2+1}+\dfrac{Dx+E}{(x^2+1)^2}$. Multiplying gives $1=A(x^2+1)^2+(Bx+C)x(x^2+1)+(Dx+E)x$.

✽ Let $x=0$: $1=A(1)^2 \implies A=1$.

✽ Expand: $1=A(x^4+2x^2+1)+(Bx^2+Cx)(x^2+1)+Dx^2+Ex$.

✽ $1=(A+B)x^4+Cx^3+(2A+B+D)x^2+(C+E)x+A$.

✽ Coeffs: $A=1$. $x^4: A+B=0 \implies B=-1$. $x^3: C=0$. $x: C+E=0 \implies E=0$. $x^2: 2A+B+D=0 \implies 2-1+D=0 \implies D=-1$.

So, $\dfrac{1}{x(x^2+1)^2}=\dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{x}{x^2+1}-\dfrac{x}{(x^2+1)^2}$.

Integration: This decomposition is identical to Example 4.1, but with an extra term.

$$\int\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{x}{x^2+1}-\frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2}\right)dx=\ln|x|-\frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+1)-\int\frac{x}{(x^2+1)^2}dx$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \ln|x| - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+1) - \left(-\frac{1}{2(x^2+1)}\right) + C \\
&= \ln|x| - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+1) + \frac{1}{2(x^2+1)} + C
\end{aligned}
$$

1.2 Integration of Irrational Functions

An irrational function is one that contains a variable raised to a fractional exponent, or in other words, under a radical sign (e.g., $\sqrt{x}$, $\sqrt[3]{x^2+1}$). Integrating these functions often requires a different approach than standard polynomial or rational functions.

The primary strategy for integrating irrational functions is to perform a **substitution that rationalizes the integrand**. By choosing an appropriate substitution, we can eliminate the radical(s) and transform the integral into a form involving a rational function, which can then be solved using techniques like polynomial long division or partial fraction decomposition.

We will explore several common types of irrational functions and the specific substitutions used to integrate them.

1.2.1 Type 1: Functions Involving $\sqrt[n]{ax+b}$

When the integrand contains a single radical of a linear expression, the substitution is straightforward.

Strategy: For an integral involving $\sqrt[n]{ax+b}$, use the substitution:

$$u = \sqrt[n]{ax+b} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad u^n = ax+b$$

From this, we solve for x and find dx in terms of u and du.

Example 1.20

Evaluate the integral $\int x\sqrt{x-3}\,dx$.

Solution:The integrand contains $\sqrt{x-3}$, which is of the form $\sqrt[2]{ax+b}$. **Choose the substitution.** Let $u = \sqrt{x-3}$.
Solve for x and dx.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&u^2 = x-3 \implies x = u^2+3 \\
&dx = 2u\,du
\end{aligned}
$$

Substitute into the integral. Replace all terms involving x with terms involving u.

$$\int x\sqrt{x-3}\,dx = \int (u^2+3)\cdot u\cdot(2u\,du)$$

Simplify and integrate the rationalized function.

$$\int (u^2+3)(2u^2)\,du = \int (2u^4+6u^2)\,du$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= 2\frac{u^5}{5} + 6\frac{u^3}{3} + C \\
&= \frac{2}{5}u^5 + 2u^3 + C
\end{aligned}
$$

Substitute back for x. Replace u with $\sqrt{x-3}$ or $(x-3)^{1/2}$.

$$\frac{2}{5}(x-3)^{5/2} + 2(x-3)^{3/2} + C$$

1.2.2 Type 2: Functions with Multiple Radicals of the Same Radicand

If the integrand contains multiple radicals of the same expression, such as $\sqrt{ax+b}$ and $\sqrt[m]{ax+b}$.

Strategy: Let k be the least common multiple (LCM) of the indices of the radicals. Use the substitution:

$$u = \sqrt[k]{ax+b}$$

Example 1.21

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{1+\sqrt[4]{x}}\,dx$.

Solution: The integrand contains $\sqrt{x} = x^{1/2}$ and $\sqrt[4]{x} = x^{1/4}$. The indices are 2 and 4. The LCM of 2 and 4 is 4. Let $u = \sqrt[4]{x}$. This gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
u^4 &= x \\
dx &= 4u^3\,du
\end{aligned}
$$

Moreover, $\sqrt{x} = u^2$. **Substituting** into the integral, we obtain

$$\int \frac{u^2}{1+u} \cdot (4u^3\,du) = \int \frac{4u^5}{u+1}\,du$$

The resulting integrand is an improper rational function. We use polynomial long division.

$$\frac{4u^5}{u+1} = 4u^4 - 4u^3 + 4u^2 - 4u + 4 - \frac{4}{u+1}$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{4u^5}{u+1}\,dx &= \int \left(4u^4 - 4u^3 + 4u^2 - 4u + 4 - \frac{4}{u+1}\right) du \\
&= 4\frac{u^5}{5} - 4\frac{u^4}{4} + 4\frac{u^3}{3} - 4\frac{u^2}{2} + 4u - 4\ln|u+1| + C \\
&= \frac{4}{5}u^5 - u^4 + \frac{4}{3}u^3 - 2u^2 + 4u - 4\ln|u+1| + C
\end{aligned}
$$

Replace u with $x^{1/4}$, we obtain

$$\int \frac{4u^5}{u+1}\,dx \frac{4}{5}x^{5/4} - x + \frac{4}{3}x^{3/4} - 2x^{1/2} + 4x^{1/4} - 4\ln|x^{1/4}+1| + C$$

1.2.3 Type 3: Radicals of Quadratic Expressions $\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}$

These integrals are typically handled by first completing the square and then using a trigonometric substitution.

Strategy:

1. **Complete the square** on the quadratic inside the radical to transform it into one of these three forms:
   - $k^2 - u^2$
   - $k^2 + u^2$
   - $u^2 - k^2$
2. **Apply the appropriate trigonometric substitution**:
   - For $\sqrt{k^2-u^2}$, let $u = k\sin\theta$.
   - For $\sqrt{k^2+u^2}$, let $u = k\tan\theta$.
   - For $\sqrt{u^2-k^2}$, let $u = k\sec\theta$.

Example 1.22

Evaluation of the Integral $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx$

We will evaluate this integral using two common methods: trigonometric substitution and hyperbolic substitution.

Method 1: Trigonometric Substitution

Let $x = a\tan(\theta)$. This implies $\tan(\theta) = \frac{x}{a}$. For this substitution to be invertible, we restrict θ to the interval $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$.

Next, we find the differential dx:

$$dx = a\sec^2(\theta)\,d\theta$$

Substitute $x = a\tan(\theta)$ into the square root term:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sqrt{x^2+a^2} &= \sqrt{(a\tan\theta)^2+a^2} \\
&= \sqrt{a^2\tan^2\theta + a^2} \\
&= \sqrt{a^2(\tan^2\theta+1)} \\
&= \sqrt{a^2\sec^2\theta} \quad (\text{since } 1+\tan^2\theta = \sec^2\theta) \\
&= |a\sec\theta|
\end{aligned}$$

Since we assume $a > 0$ and $\theta \in (-\pi/2, \pi/2)$, $\sec\theta$ is positive. Thus, we can drop the absolute value:

$$\sqrt{x^2+a^2} = a\sec\theta$$

Substitute the expressions for dx and $\sqrt{x^2+a^2}$ into the original integral:

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx = \int \frac{1}{a\sec\theta}\cdot(a\sec^2\theta\,d\theta) = \int \sec\theta\,d\theta$$

The integral of $\sec\theta$ is a standard result:

$$\int \sec\theta\,d\theta = \ln|\sec\theta+\tan\theta| + C$$

Substitute Back to x.

We need to express $\sec\theta$ and $\tan\theta$ in terms of x. We already have $\tan\theta = \frac{x}{a}$. To find $\sec\theta$, we can use the identity $1+\tan^2\theta = \sec^2\theta$:

$$\sec^2\theta = 1+\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 = \frac{a^2+x^2}{a^2} \implies \sec\theta = \frac{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{a}$$

(We take the positive root because $\sec\theta > 0$ for our chosen interval for θ).

Now substitute these back into our result:

$$\begin{aligned}\ln|\sec\theta+\tan\theta| + C &= \ln\left|\frac{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{a}+\frac{x}{a}\right| + C\\ &= \ln\left|\frac{x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{a}\right| + C\\ &= \ln|x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}| - \ln|a| + C\end{aligned}$$

Since $\ln|a|$ is just a constant, we can absorb it into the constant of integration C. Let $C' = C - \ln|a|$.

Therefore,

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx = \ln|x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}| + C'$$

Method 2: Hyperbolic Substitution

Let $x = a\sinh(u)$. Then $dx = a\cosh(u)\,du$.

Using the identity $\cosh^2(u)-\sinh^2(u)=1$, we have $1+\sinh^2(u)=\cosh^2(u)$.

$$\sqrt{x^2+a^2} = \sqrt{a^2\sinh^2(u)+a^2} = \sqrt{a^2(\sinh^2(u)+1)} = \sqrt{a^2\cosh^2(u)} = a\cosh(u)$$

(Since $\cosh(u)$ is always positive).

The integral becomes,

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx = \int \frac{1}{a\cosh(u)}\cdot(a\cosh(u)\,du) = \int 1\,du = u + C$$

Substitute Back to x.

From our substitution $x = a\sinh(u)$, we have $u = \sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$.

Therefore,

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx = \sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + C$$

Remark

Both methods yield a correct answer. The two results are equivalent due to the identity:

$$\sinh^{-1}(z) = \ln(z + \sqrt{z^2 + 1})$$

If we set $z = x/a$, the hyperbolic answer becomes:

$$\sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) = \ln\left(\frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{\frac{x^2}{a^2} + 1}\right) = \ln\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{a}\right) = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}) - \ln(a)$$

This matches the result from the trigonometric substitution, where $-\ln(a)$ is absorbed into the constant of integration.

Final Result

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}\, dx = \ln|x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}| + C \quad \text{or} \quad \sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + C$$

Example 1.23

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + 2x + 5}}\, dx$.

Solution:

Complete the square.

$$x^2 + 2x + 5 = (x^2 + 2x + 1) - 1 + 5 = (x + 1)^2 + 4 = (x + 1)^2 + 2^2$$

Then the integral becomes $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{(x + 1)^2 + 2^2}}\, dx$.

Perform the substitution. Let $u = x + 1$, so $du = dx$. The integral is now:

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{u^2 + 2^2}}\, du$$

Therefore, by Example 1.2.3, we have

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{u^2 + 2^2}}\, du = \ln|u + \sqrt{u^2 + 4}| - \ln(2) + C = \ln|u + \sqrt{u^2 + 4}| + C'$$

Finally, **substitute back** $u = x + 1$:

$$\ln|x + 1 + \sqrt{(x + 1)^2 + 4}| + C' = \ln|x + 1 + \sqrt{x^2 + 2x + 5}| + C'$$

Example 1.24

Evaluate the integral $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2-9}}$.

Solution: This integral already contains the form $\sqrt{x^2-a^2}$ with $a=3$.

Let $x = 3\sec\theta$. Then $dx = 3\sec\theta\tan\theta\,d\theta$.

We have,

$$\sqrt{x^2-9} = \sqrt{(3\sec\theta)^2-9} = \sqrt{9\sec^2\theta-9} = \sqrt{9\tan^2\theta} = 3\tan\theta$$

Hence the integral reduces to

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{1}{(3\sec\theta)(3\tan\theta)}\cdot(3\sec\theta\tan\theta\,d\theta) &= \int \frac{1}{3}\,d\theta\\ &= \frac{1}{3}\theta + C\end{aligned}$$

Finally, from $x = 3\sec\theta$, we have $\sec\theta = x/3$. This means $\theta = \tan^{-1}(x/3)$. Therefore,

$$\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2-9}} = \frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{3}\right) + C$$

Integration of the form $\int \frac{dx}{a+b\cos x}$

Integrals containing rational functions of trigonometric expressions, such as $\frac{1}{a+b\cos x}$ or $\frac{1}{a+b\sin x}$, can be systematically solved using a universal technique known as the **Weierstrass substitution**, or the **tangent half-angle substitution**. This method transforms the trigonometric integral into an integral of a rational function of a new variable t, which can then be solved using standard techniques like partial fractions or direct integration.

The substitution is defined as:

$$t = \tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$$

To use this substitution, we need to express $\cos x$, $\sin x$, and dx in terms of t.

From $t = \tan(x/2)$, we have $x/2 = \tan^{-1}(t)$, so $x = 2\tan^{-1}(t)$. Differentiating with respect to t, we get:

$$dx = \frac{2}{1+t^2}\,dt$$

We have,

$$\cos x = \frac{1-\tan^2(x/2)}{1+\tan^2(x/2)}$$

Substituting t, we get:

$$\cos x = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}$$

Similarly, for sine:

$$\sin x = \frac{2\tan(x/2)}{1+\tan^2(x/2)}$$

Substituting t, we get:

$$\sin x = \frac{2t}{1+t^2}$$

General Evaluation of $\int \frac{dx}{a+b\cos x}$

We now apply the substitution to the general integral.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{dx}{a+b\cos x} &= \int \frac{1}{a+b\left(\frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}\right)} \cdot \left(\frac{2}{1+t^2}\right) dt \\
&= \int \frac{1}{\frac{a(1+t^2)+b(1-t^2)}{1+t^2}} \cdot \frac{2}{1+t^2}\, dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{a+at^2+b-bt^2}\, dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{(a+b)+(a-b)t^2}\, dt
\end{aligned}$$

The solution to this integral depends on the signs of $a+b$ and $a-b$, which is determined by the relationship between a^2 and b^2.

Case 1: $a^2 > b^2$

In this case, $a^2 - b^2 > 0$, which implies that both $a+b$ and $a-b$ have the same sign (assuming $a > 0$). The integral is:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{2}{(a-b)t^2+(a+b)}\, dt &= \frac{2}{a-b}\int \frac{dt}{t^2+\frac{a+b}{a-b}} \\
&= \frac{2}{a-b}\int \frac{dt}{t^2+\left(\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{a-b}}\right)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

This is a standard $\tan^{-1}$ integral of the form $\int \frac{du}{u^2+k^2} = \frac{1}{k}\tan^{-1}(\frac{u}{k})$.

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{2}{a-b}\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{a-b}}}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{t}{\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{a-b}}}\right) + C \\
&= \frac{2}{a-b}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}}\tan^{-1}\left(t\sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}}\right) + C \\
&= \frac{2}{\sqrt{(a-b)(a+b)}}\tan^{-1}\left(\sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}}\,t\right) + C \\
&= \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2-b^2}}\tan^{-1}\left(\sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}}\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right) + C
\end{aligned}$$

Case 2: $a^2 < b^2$

In this case, $a^2 - b^2 < 0$, so $a-b$ and $a+b$ have opposite signs. Let's assume $a > 0, b > 0$. Then $a - b < 0$ and $b - a > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{2}{(a+b)-(b-a)t^2}\,dt &= \frac{2}{b-a}\int \frac{dt}{\frac{a+b}{b-a}-t^2} \\ &= \frac{2}{b-a}\int \frac{dt}{\left(\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{b-a}}\right)^2 - t^2}\end{aligned}$$

This is a standard integral of the form $\int \frac{du}{k^2-u^2} = \frac{1}{2k}\ln\left|\frac{k+u}{k-u}\right|$.

$$\begin{aligned}&= \frac{2}{b-a}\cdot\frac{1}{2\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{b-a}}}\ln\left|\frac{\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{b-a}}+t}{\sqrt{\frac{a+b}{b-a}}-t}\right| + C \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{(b-a)(a+b)}}\ln\left|\frac{\sqrt{a+b}+t\sqrt{b-a}}{\sqrt{a+b}-t\sqrt{b-a}}\right| + C \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2-a^2}}\ln\left|\frac{\sqrt{a+b}+\sqrt{b-a}\tan(x/2)}{\sqrt{a+b}-\sqrt{b-a}\tan(x/2)}\right| + C\end{aligned}$$

Case 3: $a^2 = b^2$

If $a = b$, the integral becomes $\int \frac{2}{2a}\,dt = \frac{1}{a}\int dt = \frac{1}{a}t + C = \frac{1}{a}\tan(x/2) + C$. If $a = -b$, the integral becomes $\int \frac{2}{2at^2}\,dt = \frac{1}{a}\int t^{-2}dt = -\frac{1}{a}t^{-1} + C = -\frac{1}{a}\cot(x/2) + C$.

Example 1.25

The case $a^2 > b^2$. Evaluate $\int \frac{dx}{5+4\cos x}$.

Solution: Here, $a = 5$ and $b = 4$. Since $a^2 = 25 > 16 = b^2$, we expect an $\tan^{-1}$ solution. Using the substitution $t = \tan(x/2)$, $\cos x = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}$, and $dx = \frac{2}{1+t^2}dt$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{dx}{5+4\cos x} &= \int \frac{1}{5+4\left(\frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}\right)}\cdot\frac{2}{1+t^2}\,dt \\ &= \int \frac{2}{5(1+t^2)+4(1-t^2)}\,dt \\ &= \int \frac{2}{5+5t^2+4-4t^2}\,dt \\ &= \int \frac{2}{9+t^2}\,dt \\ &= 2\int \frac{dt}{3^2+t^2} \\ &= 2\left(\frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{t}{3}\right)\right) + C\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3}\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right) + C$$

Example 1.26

The case $a^2 < b^2$. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{4+5\cos x}$.

Solution: Here, $a = 4$ and $b = 5$. Since $a^2 = 16 < 25 = b^2$, we expect a logarithmic solution. Using the same substitution:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{dx}{4+5\cos x} &= \int \frac{2}{4(1+t^2)+5(1-t^2)}\,dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{4+4t^2+5-5t^2}\,dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{9-t^2}\,dt \\
&= 2\int \frac{dt}{3^2-t^2} \\
&= 2\left(\frac{1}{2\cdot 3}\ln\left|\frac{3+t}{3-t}\right|\right) + C \\
&= \frac{1}{3}\ln\left|\frac{3+t}{3-t}\right| + C \\
&= \frac{1}{3}\ln\left|\frac{3+\tan(x/2)}{3-\tan(x/2)}\right| + C
\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.27

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{5-3\sin x}$.

Solution: Here we use $\sin x = \dfrac{2t}{1+t^2}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{dx}{5-3\sin x} &= \int \frac{1}{5-3\left(\frac{2t}{1+t^2}\right)}\cdot\frac{2}{1+t^2}\,dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{5(1+t^2)-3(2t)}\,dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{5+5t^2-6t}\,dt \\
&= 2\int \frac{dt}{5t^2-6t+5}
\end{aligned}$$

The denominator does not factor easily, so we complete the square.

$$5t^2-6t+5 = 5\left(t^2-\frac{6}{5}t+1\right) = 5\left(\left(t-\frac{3}{5}\right)^2-\frac{9}{25}+1\right) = 5\left(\left(t-\frac{3}{5}\right)^2+\frac{16}{25}\right)$$

The integral becomes:

$$2\int \frac{dt}{5\left(\left(t-\frac{3}{5}\right)^2+\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2\right)} = \frac{2}{5}\int \frac{dt}{\left(t-\frac{3}{5}\right)^2+\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2}$$

$$= \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{1}{4/5}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{t-3/5}{4/5}\right)\right) + C$$
$$= \frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{5}{4}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{5t-3}{4}\right) + C$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{5\tan(x/2)-3}{4}\right) + C$$

1.3 Exercises Based on Chapter 1

This set of exercises is designed to test the understanding of the integration techniques covered in Unit I, including partial fractions, integration of irrational functions, and integration of specific trigonometric forms.

1. Integration by Partial Fractions

Evaluate the following integrals using the method of partial fraction decomposition.

1. $\int \frac{x+1}{x^2+2x-3}\,dx$
2. $\int \frac{2x^2-1}{x^3-x}\,dx$
3. $\int \frac{1}{x^2-9}\,dx$
4. $\int \frac{x}{(x-1)^2(x+1)}\,dx$
5. $\int \frac{2x^2+3}{(x+2)^3}\,dx$
6. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2(x-1)}$
7. $\int \frac{3x^2+x+1}{(x-1)(x^2+1)}\,dx$
8. $\int \frac{x-2}{x^2+2x+5}\,dx$ (Hint: Complete the square first.)
9. $\int \frac{1}{(x^2+4)(x^2+9)}\,dx$
10. $\int \frac{x^3+x-1}{(x^2+2)^2}\,dx$
11. $\int \frac{1}{x(x^2+1)^2}\,dx$
12. $\int \frac{2x^3+x^2+2x}{(x^2+1)^2}\,dx$
13. $\int \frac{x^3+2x}{x^2-1}\,dx$ (Hint: Perform long division first.)
14. $\int \frac{x^4}{x^2-x-2}\,dx$

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{2x^3 - 4x^2 - x - 3}{x^2 - 2x - 3}\,dx$

2. Integration of Irrational Functions

Evaluate the following integrals, typically by using an appropriate substitution.

16. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{x+1}\,dx$ (Hint: Let $u = \sqrt{x+1}$ or $u^2 = x + 1$.)

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{2x-1}}$

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1+\sqrt{x}}{1-\sqrt{x}}\,dx$

19. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{9-x^2}\,dx$ (Hint: Let $x = 3\sin\theta$.)

20. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-4}}$ (Hint: Let $x = 2\sec\theta$.)

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+1)^{3/2}}$ (Hint: Let $x = \tan\theta$.)

22. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+2}}$ (Hint: Complete the square.)

3. Integration of Trigonometric Rational Functions

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{2+\cos x}$

24. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{1+2\cos x}$

25. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{5+3\sin x}$

26. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{1-\sin x}$

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{1+\sin x+\cos x}$

28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos x}{1+\cos x}\,dx$

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{3\sin x+4\cos x}$

Chapter 2

INTEGRATION USING REDUCTION FORMULAE

Integrating functions raised to high powers, such as $\sin^{10} x$, can be a laborious task using standard methods. This unit introduces the elegant and powerful technique of reduction formulae. These formulae provide a recursive recipe that expresses a complex integral in terms of a simpler one of the same type, typically with a lower power. This systematic approach allows us to break down otherwise difficult integrals into manageable, solvable forms.

2.1 Reduction Formula for $\int \sin^n x\,dx$

Derivation of the Formula

We will use the method of integration by parts, where $\int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du$.

Derivation. We begin by splitting $\sin^n x$ into two parts: $\sin^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x$.

$$I_n = \int \sin^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x\,dx$$

Now, we choose our u and dv for integration by parts:

- Let $u = \sin^{n-1} x$. Then, using the chain rule, $du = (n-1)\sin^{n-2} x \cdot \cos x\,dx$.
- Let $dv = \sin x\,dx$. Then $v = \int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x$.

Applying the integration by parts formula:

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &= uv - \int v\,du \\ &= (\sin^{n-1} x)(-\cos x) - \int (-\cos x)\left((n-1)\sin^{n-2} x \cdot \cos x\right)\,dx \\ &= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1)\int \cos^2 x \sin^{n-2} x\,dx \end{aligned}$$

To express the new integral back in terms of sine, we use the Pythagorean identity $\cos^2 x = 1 - \sin^2 x$.

$$I_n = -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1)\int (1-\sin^2 x)\sin^{n-2} x\,dx$$

$$= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1)\left(\int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx - \int \sin^n x \, dx\right)$$

We recognize that $\int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx = I_{n-2}$ and $\int \sin^n x \, dx = I_n$.

$$I_n = -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1)I_{n-2} - (n-1)I_n$$

Now, we solve this equation for I_n. We gather all terms with I_n on one side:

$$\begin{aligned} I_n + (n-1)I_n &= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1)I_{n-2} \\ nI_n &= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1)I_{n-2} \end{aligned}$$

Finally, dividing by n, we obtain the reduction formula:

$$I_n = -\frac{1}{n} \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{n-1}{n} I_{n-2}$$

■

Reduction Formula for Sine

The reduction formula for $\int \sin^n x \, dx$ for $n \geq 2$ is:

$$\int \sin^n x \, dx = -\frac{1}{n} \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx$$

The base cases for the recursion are:

- ✿ $I_0 = \int \sin^0 x \, dx = \int 1 \, dx = x + C$
- ✿ $I_1 = \int \sin^1 x \, dx = -\cos x + C$

Solved Examples

Here we demonstrate the application of the formula.

Example 2.1

Evaluate $\int \sin^3 x \, dx$.

Solution: Here, $n = 3$. We apply the formula to reduce the integral to one involving $\sin^{3-2} x = \sin x$.

$$\begin{aligned} I_3 = \int \sin^3 x \, dx &= -\frac{1}{3} \sin^2 x \cos x + \frac{3-1}{3} \int \sin^1 x \, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{3} \sin^2 x \cos x + \frac{2}{3} \int \sin x \, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{3} \sin^2 x \cos x + \frac{2}{3}(-\cos x) + C \\ &= -\frac{1}{3} \sin^2 x \cos x - \frac{2}{3} \cos x + C \end{aligned}$$

Example 2.2

Evaluate $\int \sin^4 x\,dx$.

Solution: Here, $n = 4$. We first reduce to an integral of $\sin^2 x$.

$$\begin{aligned} I_4 = \int \sin^4 x\,dx &= -\frac{1}{4}\sin^3 x\cos x + \frac{3}{4}\int \sin^2 x\,dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{4}\sin^3 x\cos x + \frac{3}{4}I_2 \end{aligned}$$

Now we apply the formula again for I_2:

$$\begin{aligned} I_2 = \int \sin^2 x\,dx &= -\frac{1}{2}\sin^1 x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}\int \sin^0 x\,dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}\int 1\,dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}x \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this back into the expression for I_4:

$$\begin{aligned} I_4 &= -\frac{1}{4}\sin^3 x\cos x + \frac{3}{4}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}x\right) + C \\ &= -\frac{1}{4}\sin^3 x\cos x - \frac{3}{8}\sin x\cos x + \frac{3}{8}x + C \end{aligned}$$

Example 2.3

Evaluate $\int \sin^5 x\,dx$.

Solution: Let's apply the formula recursively.

$$\begin{aligned} I_5 &= -\frac{1}{5}\sin^4 x\cos x + \frac{4}{5}I_3 \\ I_3 &= -\frac{1}{3}\sin^2 x\cos x + \frac{2}{3}I_1 \\ I_1 &= \int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x \end{aligned}$$

Now, we substitute backwards:

$$\begin{aligned} I_3 &= -\frac{1}{3}\sin^2 x\cos x + \frac{2}{3}(-\cos x) = -\frac{1}{3}\sin^2 x\cos x - \frac{2}{3}\cos x \\ I_5 &= -\frac{1}{5}\sin^4 x\cos x + \frac{4}{5}\left(-\frac{1}{3}\sin^2 x\cos x - \frac{2}{3}\cos x\right) + C \\ &= -\frac{1}{5}\sin^4 x\cos x - \frac{4}{15}\sin^2 x\cos x - \frac{8}{15}\cos x + C \end{aligned}$$

Example 2.4

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6 x\,dx$.

Solution: For a definite integral from 0 to $\pi/2$, the term $\left[-\frac{1}{n}\sin^{n-1}x\cos x\right]_0^{\pi/2}$ simplifies greatly. At $x = \pi/2$, $\cos(\pi/2) = 0$. At $x = 0$, $\sin(0) = 0$ (for $n-1 \geq 1$). Therefore, this entire term evaluates to $0 - 0 = 0$. The reduction formula for this definite integral becomes:

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x\,dx = \frac{n-1}{n}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-2} x\,dx$$

Applying this recursively for $n = 6$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6 x\,dx &= \frac{5}{6}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 x\,dx \\
&= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 x\,dx \\
&= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^0 x\,dx \\
&= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2} 1\,dx \\
&= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\cdot[x]_0^{\pi/2} \\
&= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{\pi}{2} = \frac{15\pi}{96} = \frac{5\pi}{32}
\end{aligned}$$

This is a specific application known as Wallis's Formula.

Example 2.5

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^7 x\,dx$.

Solution: Using the simplified definite integral formula from the previous example:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^7 x\,dx &= \frac{6}{7}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^5 x\,dx \\
&= \frac{6}{7}\cdot\frac{4}{5}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 x\,dx \\
&= \frac{6}{7}\cdot\frac{4}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{3}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^1 x\,dx \\
&= \frac{6}{7}\cdot\frac{4}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot[-\cos x]_0^{\pi/2} \\
&= \frac{6}{7}\cdot\frac{4}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot(-\cos(\pi/2) - (-\cos(0))) \\
&= \frac{6}{7}\cdot\frac{4}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot(0 - (-1)) \\
&= \frac{48}{105} = \frac{16}{35}
\end{aligned}$$

2.2 Reduction Formula for $\int \cos^n x\,dx$

Derivation of the Formula

The derivation uses integration by parts, which is defined as $\int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du$. The strategy is very similar to the one used for $\sin^n x$.

Derivation. We start by splitting $\cos^n x$ into the product $\cos^{n-1} x \cdot \cos x$.

$$I_n = \int \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \cos x\,dx$$

Next, we choose u and dv for integration by parts:

- Let $u = \cos^{n-1} x$. Using the chain rule, $du = (n-1)\cos^{n-2} x \cdot (-\sin x)\,dx$.
- Let $dv = \cos x\,dx$. Then $v = \int \cos x\,dx = \sin x$.

Applying the integration by parts formula:

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n &= uv - \int v\,du \\
&= (\cos^{n-1} x)(\sin x) - \int (\sin x)\left((n-1)\cos^{n-2} x \cdot (-\sin x)\right)\,dx \\
&= \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + (n-1)\int \sin^2 x \cos^{n-2} x\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

To return to an integral solely in terms of cosine, we use the identity $\sin^2 x = 1 - \cos^2 x$.

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n &= \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + (n-1)\int (1-\cos^2 x)\cos^{n-2} x\,dx \\
&= \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + (n-1)\left(\int \cos^{n-2} x\,dx - \int \cos^n x\,dx\right)
\end{aligned}$$

We recognize the integrals as I_{n-2} and I_n.

$$I_n = \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + (n-1)I_{n-2} - (n-1)I_n$$

Now, we must solve for I_n. We move all I_n terms to the left side:

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n + (n-1)I_n &= \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + (n-1)I_{n-2} \\
nI_n &= \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + (n-1)I_{n-2}
\end{aligned}$$

Dividing by n gives us the final reduction formula:

$$I_n = \frac{1}{n}\sin x \cos^{n-1} x + \frac{n-1}{n} I_{n-2}$$

■

Reduction Formula for Cosine

The reduction formula for $\int \cos^n x\,dx$ for $n \geq 2$ is:

$$\int \cos^n x\,dx = \frac{1}{n}\sin x\cos^{n-1} x + \frac{n-1}{n}\int \cos^{n-2} x\,dx$$

The base cases for the recursion are:

- $I_0 = \int \cos^0 x\,dx = \int 1\,dx = x + C$
- $I_1 = \int \cos^1 x\,dx = \sin x + C$

Solved Examples

Example 2.6

Evaluate $\int \cos^3 x\,dx$.

Solution. Here, $n = 3$. We apply the formula once to reduce the power from 3 to 1.

$$\begin{aligned} I_3 = \int \cos^3 x\,dx &= \frac{1}{3}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{3-1}{3}\int \cos^1 x\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{3}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{2}{3}\int \cos x\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{3}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{2}{3}\sin x + C \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.7

Evaluate $\int \cos^4 x\,dx$.

Solution. Here, $n = 4$. We must apply the formula twice.

$$\begin{aligned} I_4 = \int \cos^4 x\,dx &= \frac{1}{4}\sin x\cos^3 x + \frac{3}{4}\int \cos^2 x\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{4}\sin x\cos^3 x + \frac{3}{4}I_2 \end{aligned}$$

Now, we find I_2:

$$\begin{aligned} I_2 = \int \cos^2 x\,dx &= \frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos^1 x + \frac{1}{2}\int \cos^0 x\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}\int 1\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}x \end{aligned}$$

Finally, substitute the expression for I_2 back into the one for I_4:

$$I_4 = \frac{1}{4}\sin x\cos^3 x + \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{1}{2}\sin x\cos x + \frac{1}{2}x\right) + C$$

$$= \frac{1}{4}\sin x\cos^3 x + \frac{3}{8}\sin x\cos x + \frac{3}{8}x + C$$

■

Example 2.8

Evaluate $\int \cos^5 x\,dx$.

Solution. We apply the formula recursively.

$$I_5 = \frac{1}{5}\sin x\cos^4 x + \frac{4}{5}I_3$$
$$I_3 = \frac{1}{3}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{2}{3}I_1$$
$$I_1 = \int \cos x\,dx = \sin x$$

Substituting backwards:

$$\begin{aligned} I_3 &= \frac{1}{3}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{2}{3}(\sin x) \\ I_5 &= \frac{1}{5}\sin x\cos^4 x + \frac{4}{5}\left(\frac{1}{3}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{2}{3}\sin x\right) + C \\ &= \frac{1}{5}\sin x\cos^4 x + \frac{4}{15}\sin x\cos^2 x + \frac{8}{15}\sin x + C \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.9

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^6 x\,dx$.

Solution. For a definite integral from 0 to $\pi/2$, the term $\left[\frac{1}{n}\sin x\cos^{n-1} x\right]_0^{\pi/2}$ evaluates to zero because $\sin(0) = 0$ and $\cos(\pi/2) = 0$. This gives a simplified formula for definite integrals, known as Wallis's Formula:

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x\,dx = \frac{n-1}{n}\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x\,dx$$

Applying this for $n = 6$:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^6 x\,dx &= \frac{5}{6}\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^4 x\,dx \\ &= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^2 x\,dx \\ &= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^0 x\,dx \\ &= \frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2} 1\,dx \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{5}{6} \cdot \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot [x]_0^{\pi/2}$$
$$= \frac{5}{6} \cdot \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} = \frac{15\pi}{96} = \frac{5\pi}{32}$$

This result is identical to the integral of $\sin^6 x$ over the same interval. ■

Example 2.10

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^7 x \, dx$.

Solution. Using the simplified definite integral formula from the previous example for an odd power:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^7 x \, dx &= \frac{6}{7} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^5 x \, dx \\
&= \frac{6}{7} \cdot \frac{4}{5} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^3 x \, dx \\
&= \frac{6}{7} \cdot \frac{4}{5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^1 x \, dx \\
&= \frac{6}{7} \cdot \frac{4}{5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \cdot [\sin x]_0^{\pi/2} \\
&= \frac{6}{7} \cdot \frac{4}{5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \cdot (\sin(\pi/2) - \sin(0)) \\
&= \frac{6}{7} \cdot \frac{4}{5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \cdot (1 - 0) \\
&= \frac{48}{105} = \frac{16}{35}
\end{aligned}$$

This result is also identical to the integral of $\sin^7 x$ over the same interval. ■

A Note on the Relationship Between Sine and Cosine Reduction Formulas

The Two Formulas

The reduction formulas for $\sin^n x$ and $\cos^n x$ are derived using a similar process of integration by parts. While their indefinite forms appear distinct, they are deeply connected.

The formula for sine is:

$$\int \sin^n x \, dx = -\frac{1}{n} \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx$$

The formula for cosine is:

$$\int \cos^n x \, dx = \frac{1}{n} \sin x \cos^{n-1} x + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$$

The Core Relationship: Definite Integrals

The fundamental link between these two functions arises from the co-function identity $\cos(x) = \sin(\pi/2 - x)$. This identity leads to a remarkable result for definite integrals over the symmetric interval $[0, \pi/2]$.

The Equality Principle

For any integer $n \geq 0$, the definite integrals of $\sin^n x$ and $\cos^n x$ from 0 to $\pi/2$ are identical:

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx$$

Proof of the Equality. We can prove this by starting with the cosine integral and applying a substitution. Let $u = \pi/2 - x$. This implies $x = \pi/2 - u$ and $dx = -du$. We must also change the limits of integration:

- When $x = 0$, $u = \pi/2 - 0 = \pi/2$.
- When $x = \pi/2$, $u = \pi/2 - \pi/2 = 0$.

Substituting these into the integral:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx &= \int_{\pi/2}^{0} \cos^n(\pi/2 - u)\,(-du) \\
&= -\int_{\pi/2}^{0} \sin^n(u)\, du \quad \text{(using the co-function identity)} \\
&= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n(u)\, du \quad \text{(using the negative sign to flip the limits)}
\end{aligned}$$

Since u is a dummy variable of integration, $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n(u)\, du$ is the same as $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n(x)\, dx$. Therefore, the equality is proven. ■

Consequence: Wallis's Formula

Because their definite integrals over $[0, \pi/2]$ are the same, both functions share the same simplified reduction formula for this interval, known as **Wallis's Formula**. For both $I_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x \, dx$ and $I_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx$:

- If **n is even**, the result is: $I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdots \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}$
- If **n is odd**, the result is: $I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdots \frac{2}{3} \cdot 1$

In summary, while the indefinite integrals for powers of sine and cosine have slightly different forms, their definite integrals over $[0, \pi/2]$ are identical, showcasing a beautiful symmetry rooted in the fundamental properties of trigonometric functions.

2.3 Reduction Formulas for Tangent and Cotangent

The reduction formulas for $\tan^n x$ and $\cot^n x$ are derived not with integration by parts, but by using trigonometric identities to split the integral into a solvable part and a lower-power version of the original integral.

Reduction Formula for $\int \tan^n x \, dx$

Derivation

Let $I_n = \int \tan^n x \, dx$. The key is to use the identity $\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$.

Derivation. We start by splitting off a factor of $\tan^2 x$ from $\tan^n x$.

$$I_n = \int \tan^{n-2} x \cdot \tan^2 x \, dx$$

Now, substitute the identity:

$$I_n = \int \tan^{n-2} x(\sec^2 x - 1) \, dx$$

Distribute the $\tan^{n-2} x$ term:

$$I_n = \int (\tan^{n-2} x \sec^2 x - \tan^{n-2} x) \, dx$$

Split the integral into two parts:

$$I_n = \int \tan^{n-2} x \sec^2 x \, dx - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx$$

The second integral is simply I_{n-2}. The first integral can be solved with a u-substitution. Let $u = \tan x$, so $du = \sec^2 x \, dx$. The first integral becomes:

$$\int u^{n-2} \, du = \frac{u^{n-1}}{n-1} = \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1}$$

Combining these results, we get the reduction formula:

$$I_n = \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1} - I_{n-2}$$

■

Reduction Formula for Tangent

The reduction formula for $\int \tan^n x \, dx$ for $n \geq 2$ is:

$$\int \tan^n x \, dx = \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1} - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx$$

The base cases for the recursion are:

- $I_0 = \int \tan^0 x \, dx = \int 1 \, dx = x + C$
- $I_1 = \int \tan x \, dx = \ln|\sec x| + C$

Example 2.11

Evaluate $\int \tan^3 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using the formula with $n = 3$:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \tan^3 x\,dx &= \frac{\tan^{3-1} x}{3-1} - \int \tan^{3-2} x\,dx \\ &= \frac{\tan^2 x}{2} - \int \tan x\,dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x - \ln|\sec x| + C\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.12

Evaluate $\int \tan^4 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using the formula with $n = 4$, we get I_4:

$$I_4 = \int \tan^4 x\,dx = \frac{\tan^3 x}{3} - \int \tan^2 x\,dx = \frac{\tan^3 x}{3} - I_2$$

Now we apply the formula to find I_2:

$$I_2 = \int \tan^2 x\,dx = \frac{\tan^1 x}{1} - \int \tan^0 x\,dx = \tan x - \int 1\,dx = \tan x - x$$

Substituting this back into the expression for I_4:

$$\begin{aligned}I_4 &= \frac{1}{3}\tan^3 x - (\tan x - x) + C \\ &= \frac{1}{3}\tan^3 x - \tan x + x + C\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.13

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^5 x\,dx$.

Solution. Let $I_n = \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^n x\,dx$. The formula becomes $I_n = \left[\frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1}\right]_0^{\pi/4} - I_{n-2}$.

Since $\tan(0) = 0$ and $\tan(\pi/4) = 1$, the definite part is $\frac{1^{n-1}}{n-1} - 0 = \frac{1}{n-1}$.

$$I_5 = \frac{1}{4} - I_3$$

$$I_3 = \frac{1}{2} - I_1$$

$I_1 = \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan x\,dx = [\ln|\sec x|]_0^{\pi/4} = \ln|\sec(\pi/4)| - \ln|\sec(0)| = \ln(\sqrt{2}) - \ln(1) = \frac{1}{2}\ln(2)$

Substituting back:

$$I_3 = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\ln(2)$$
$$I_5 = \frac{1}{4} - I_3 = \frac{1}{4} - \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\ln(2)\right) = -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\ln(2)$$

■

subsection*Reduction Formula for $\int \cot^n x\,dx$

Derivation

Let $I_n = \int \cot^n x\,dx$. The derivation is analogous to that for tangent, using the identity $\cot^2 x = \csc^2 x - 1$.

Derivation. We split off a factor of $\cot^2 x$.

$$I_n = \int \cot^{n-2} x \cdot \cot^2 x\,dx$$

Substitute the identity:

$$I_n = \int \cot^{n-2} x(\csc^2 x - 1)\,dx$$

Distribute and split the integral:

$$I_n = \int \cot^{n-2} x \csc^2 x\,dx - \int \cot^{n-2} x\,dx$$

The second integral is I_{n-2}. For the first integral, let $u = \cot x$, so $du = -\csc^2 x\,dx$.

$$\int u^{n-2}(-du) = -\int u^{n-2}\,du = -\frac{u^{n-1}}{n-1} = -\frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1}$$

Combining these gives the reduction formula:

$$I_n = -\frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1} - I_{n-2}$$

■

Reduction Formula for Cotangent

The reduction formula for $\int \cot^n x\,dx$ for $n \geq 2$ is:

$$\int \cot^n x\,dx = -\frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1} - \int \cot^{n-2} x\,dx$$

The base cases for the recursion are:

✿ $I_0 = \int \cot^0 x\,dx = \int 1\,dx = x + C$

✿ $I_1 = \int \cot x \, dx = \ln|\sin x| + C$

Example 2.14

Evaluate $\int \cot^3 x \, dx$.

Solution. Using the formula with $n = 3$:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \cot^3 x \, dx &= -\frac{\cot^{3-1} x}{3-1} - \int \cot^{3-2} x \, dx \\ &= -\frac{\cot^2 x}{2} - \int \cot x \, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\cot^2 x - \ln|\sin x| + C\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.15

Evaluate $\int \cot^4 x \, dx$.

Solution. Let $I_n = \int \cot^n x \, dx$. For $n = 4$, we have:

$$I_4 = -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} - \int \cot^2 x \, dx = -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} - I_2$$

Now we find I_2:

$$I_2 = -\frac{\cot^1 x}{1} - \int \cot^0 x \, dx = -\cot x - \int 1 \, dx = -\cot x - x$$

Substituting back into the expression for I_4:

$$\begin{aligned}I_4 &= -\frac{1}{3}\cot^3 x - (-\cot x - x) + C \\ &= -\frac{1}{3}\cot^3 x + \cot x + x + C\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.16

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \cot^4 x \, dx$.

Solution. Let $I_n = \int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \cot^n x \, dx$. The formula becomes $I_n = \left[-\frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1}\right]_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} - I_{n-2}$.

Since $\cot(\pi/2) = 0$ and $\cot(\pi/4) = 1$, the definite part is $-\frac{0^{n-1}}{n-1} - \left(-\frac{1^{n-1}}{n-1}\right) = \frac{1}{n-1}$.

$$I_4 = \frac{1}{3} - I_2$$

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{1} - I_0 = 1 - \int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} 1\,dx = 1 - [x]_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} = 1 - \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1 - \frac{\pi}{4}$$

Substituting back:

$$I_4 = \frac{1}{3} - I_2 = \frac{1}{3} - \left(1 - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{1}{3} - 1 + \frac{\pi}{4} = -\frac{2}{3} + \frac{\pi}{4}$$

■

Reduction Formulas for Secant and Cosecant

These formulas are crucial for integrating higher powers of secant and cosecant. They are both derived using integration by parts, and their derivations are closely related.

2.4 Reduction Formula for $\int \sec^n x\,dx$

Derivation

Let $I_n = \int \sec^n x\,dx$. The key is to split off a factor of $\sec^2 x$, as its integral ($\tan x$) is well-known.

Derivation. We write $\sec^n x = \sec^{n-2} x \cdot \sec^2 x$.

$$I_n = \int \sec^{n-2} x \cdot \sec^2 x\,dx$$

We apply integration by parts with:

- $u = \sec^{n-2} x \implies du = (n-2)\sec^{n-3} x(\sec x \tan x)\,dx = (n-2)\sec^{n-2} x \tan x\,dx$
- $dv = \sec^2 x\,dx \implies v = \tan x$

Applying the formula $I_n = uv - \int v\,du$:

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &= (\sec^{n-2} x)(\tan x) - \int (\tan x)(n-2)\sec^{n-2} x \tan x\,dx \\ &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x - (n-2)\int \tan^2 x \sec^{n-2} x\,dx \end{aligned}$$

Using the identity $\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$ to return to an integral of secants:

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x - (n-2)\int (\sec^2 x - 1)\sec^{n-2} x\,dx \\ &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x - (n-2)\left(\int \sec^n x\,dx - \int \sec^{n-2} x\,dx\right) \\ I_n &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x - (n-2)I_n + (n-2)I_{n-2} \end{aligned}$$

Solving for I_n:

$$\begin{aligned} I_n + (n-2)I_n &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x + (n-2)I_{n-2} \\ (n-1)I_n &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x + (n-2)I_{n-2} \\ I_n &= \frac{1}{n-1}\sec^{n-2} x \tan x + \frac{n-2}{n-1}I_{n-2} \end{aligned}$$

■

Reduction Formula for Secant

The reduction formula for $\int \sec^n x\,dx$ for $n \geq 2$ is:

$$\int \sec^n x\,dx = \frac{1}{n-1}\sec^{n-2} x \tan x + \frac{n-2}{n-1}\int \sec^{n-2} x\,dx$$

The base cases are:

- ✿ $I_0 = \int 1\,dx = x + C$
- ✿ $I_1 = \int \sec x\,dx = \ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C$

Example 2.17

Evaluate $\int \sec^3 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using the formula with $n = 3$:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sec^3 x\,dx &= \frac{1}{2}\sec^1 x \tan x + \frac{1}{2}\int \sec^1 x\,dx\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\sec x \tan x + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.18

Evaluate $\int \sec^4 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using $n = 4$, let $I_n = \int \sec^n x\,dx$.

$$I_4 = \frac{1}{3}\sec^2 x \tan x + \frac{2}{3}I_2$$

We know $I_2 = \int \sec^2 x\,dx = \tan x$. Substituting this in:

$$I_4 = \frac{1}{3}\sec^2 x \tan x + \frac{2}{3}\tan x + C$$

■

Example 2.19

Evaluate $\int \sec^5 x\,dx$.

Solution. Let's apply the formula recursively. $I_5 = \frac{1}{4}\sec^3 x \tan x + \frac{3}{4}I_3$. We use the result from our first example for I_3:

$$I_5 = \frac{1}{4}\sec^3 x \tan x + \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{1}{2}\sec x \tan x + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\sec x + \tan x|\right) + C$$

$$= \frac{1}{4}\sec^3 x \tan x + \frac{3}{8}\sec x \tan x + \frac{3}{8}\ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C$$

■

Example 2.20

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^4 x\, dx$.

Solution. From Example 2, the indefinite integral is $\frac{1}{3}\sec^2 x \tan x + \frac{2}{3}\tan x$. We evaluate this from 0 to $\pi/4$.

$$\left[\frac{1}{3}\sec^2 x \tan x + \frac{2}{3}\tan x\right]_0^{\pi/4}$$

At $x = \pi/4$: $\tan(\pi/4) = 1, \sec(\pi/4) = \sqrt{2}$. The value is $\frac{1}{3}(\sqrt{2})^2(1) + \frac{2}{3}(1) = \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2}{3} = \frac{4}{3}$.
At $x = 0$: $\tan(0) = 0$. The value is 0. The result is $\frac{4}{3} - 0 = \frac{4}{3}$. ■

Example 2.21

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/3} \sec^3 x\, dx$.

Solution. Using the indefinite integral for $\sec^3 x$:

$$\left[\frac{1}{2}\sec x \tan x + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\sec x + \tan x|\right]_0^{\pi/3}$$

At $x = \pi/3$: $\sec(\pi/3) = 2, \tan(\pi/3) = \sqrt{3}$. The value is $\frac{1}{2}(2)(\sqrt{3}) + \frac{1}{2}\ln|2 + \sqrt{3}| = \sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{2}\ln(2 + \sqrt{3})$. At $x = 0$: $\sec(0) = 1, \tan(0) = 0$. The value is $\frac{1}{2}(1)(0) + \frac{1}{2}\ln|1+0| = 0$.
The result is $\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{2}\ln(2 + \sqrt{3})$. ■

2.5 Reduction Formula for $\int \csc^n x\, dx$

Derivation

Let $I_n = \int \csc^n x\, dx$. The derivation is analogous to that for secant, using integration by parts and splitting off a factor of $\csc^2 x$.

Derivation. We write $\csc^n x = \csc^{n-2} x \cdot \csc^2 x$.

$$I_n = \int \csc^{n-2} x \cdot \csc^2 x\, dx$$

Apply integration by parts with:

- $u = \csc^{n-2} x \implies du = (n-2)\csc^{n-3} x(-\csc x \cot x)\, dx = -(n-2)\csc^{n-2} x \cot x\, dx$
- $dv = \csc^2 x\, dx \implies v = -\cot x$

Applying the formula $I_n = uv - \int v\,du$:

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n &= (\csc^{n-2} x)(-\cot x) - \int (-\cot x)(-(n-2)\csc^{n-2} x \cot x)\,dx \\
&= -\csc^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2)\int \cot^2 x \csc^{n-2} x\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

Using the identity $\cot^2 x = \csc^2 x - 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n &= -\csc^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2)\int (\csc^2 x - 1)\csc^{n-2} x\,dx \\
&= -\csc^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2)\left(\int \csc^n x\,dx - \int \csc^{n-2} x\,dx\right) \\
I_n &= -\csc^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2)I_n + (n-2)I_{n-2}
\end{aligned}$$

Solving for I_n:

$$\begin{aligned}
I_n + (n-2)I_n &= -\csc^{n-2} x \cot x + (n-2)I_{n-2} \\
(n-1)I_n &= -\csc^{n-2} x \cot x + (n-2)I_{n-2} \\
I_n &= -\frac{1}{n-1}\csc^{n-2} x \cot x + \frac{n-2}{n-1}I_{n-2}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Reduction Formula for Cosecant

The reduction formula for $\int \csc^n x\,dx$ for $n \geq 2$ is:

$$\int \csc^n x\,dx = -\frac{1}{n-1}\csc^{n-2} x \cot x + \frac{n-2}{n-1}\int \csc^{n-2} x\,dx$$

The base cases for the recursion are:

- ✿ $I_0 = \int 1\,dx = x + C$
- ✿ $I_1 = \int \csc x\,dx = \ln|\csc x - \cot x| + C$

Example 2.22

Evaluate $\int \csc^3 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using the formula with $n = 3$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \csc^3 x\,dx &= -\frac{1}{2}\csc^1 x \cot x + \frac{1}{2}\int \csc^1 x\,dx \\
&= -\frac{1}{2}\csc x \cot x + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\csc x - \cot x| + C
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.23

Evaluate $\int \csc^4 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using $n = 4$, let $I_n = \int \csc^n x\,dx$.

$$I_4 = -\frac{1}{3}\csc^2 x \cot x + \frac{2}{3} I_2$$

We know $I_2 = \int \csc^2 x\,dx = -\cot x$. Substituting this in:

$$I_4 = -\frac{1}{3}\csc^2 x \cot x + \frac{2}{3}(-\cot x) + C = -\frac{1}{3}\csc^2 x \cot x - \frac{2}{3}\cot x + C$$

■

Example 2.24

Evaluate $\int \csc^5 x\,dx$.

Solution. Let's apply the formula recursively. $I_5 = -\frac{1}{4}\csc^3 x \cot x + \frac{3}{4} I_3$. We use the result from our first example for I_3:

$$\begin{aligned} I_5 &= -\frac{1}{4}\csc^3 x \cot x + \frac{3}{4}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\csc x \cot x + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\csc x - \cot x|\right) + C \\ &= -\frac{1}{4}\csc^3 x \cot x - \frac{3}{8}\csc x \cot x + \frac{3}{8}\ln|\csc x - \cot x| + C \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.25

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \csc^4 x\,dx$.

Solution. From Example 2, the indefinite integral is $-\frac{1}{3}\csc^2 x \cot x - \frac{2}{3}\cot x$. We evaluate this from $\pi/4$ to $\pi/2$.

$$\left[-\frac{1}{3}\csc^2 x \cot x - \frac{2}{3}\cot x\right]_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2}$$

At $x = \pi/2$: $\cot(\pi/2) = 0$. The value is 0. At $x = \pi/4$: $\cot(\pi/4) = 1, \csc(\pi/4) = \sqrt{2}$. The value is $-\frac{1}{3}(\sqrt{2})^2(1) - \frac{2}{3}(1) = -\frac{2}{3} - \frac{2}{3} = -\frac{4}{3}$. The result is $0 - (-\frac{4}{3}) = \frac{4}{3}$. ■

Example 2.26

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \csc^3 x\,dx$.

Solution. Using the indefinite integral for $\csc^3 x$:

$$\left[-\frac{1}{2}\csc x\cot x + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\csc x - \cot x|\right]_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2}$$

At $x = \pi/2$: $\csc(\pi/2) = 1, \cot(\pi/2) = 0$. The value is $0 + \frac{1}{2}\ln|1-0| = 0$. At $x = \pi/4$: $\csc(\pi/4) = \sqrt{2}, \cot(\pi/4) = 1$. The value is $-\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{2})(1) + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\sqrt{2}-1| = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\ln(\sqrt{2}-1)$. The result is $0 - \left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\ln(\sqrt{2}-1)\right) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\ln(\sqrt{2}-1)$. ■

2.6 Reduction Formula for $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x\,dx$

This formula, denoted $I_{m,n}$, is highly versatile. It can be derived in several ways to connect $I_{m,n}$ to integrals with lower powers of sine or cosine. Here, we derive a formula that reduces the power of cosine. A similar formula exists to reduce the power of sine.

Derivation (Reducing the power of n)

Derivation. We use integration by parts. The key is to split the integral as

$$\int \cos^{n-1} x(\sin^m x\cos x)\,dx$$

✽ Let $u = \cos^{n-1} x \quad \Longrightarrow \quad du = -(n-1)\cos^{n-2} x\sin x\,dx$.

✽ Let $dv = \sin^m x\cos x\,dx \quad \Longrightarrow \quad v = \int \sin^m x\cos x\,dx = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x}{m+1}$.

Applying integration by parts, $I_{m,n} = uv - \int v\,du$:

$$\begin{aligned} I_{m,n} &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} - \int \frac{\sin^{m+1} x}{m+1}\cdot(-(n-1)\cos^{n-2} x\sin x)\,dx \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1}\int \sin^{m+2} x\cos^{n-2} x\,dx \end{aligned}$$

We rewrite $\sin^{m+2} x = \sin^m x\sin^2 x = \sin^m x(1-\cos^2 x)$.

$$\begin{aligned} I_{m,n} &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1}\int \sin^m x(1-\cos^2 x)\cos^{n-2} x\,dx \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1}\left(\int \sin^m x\cos^{n-2} x\,dx - \int \sin^m x\cos^n x\,dx\right) \\ I_{m,n} &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1}I_{m,n-2} - \frac{n-1}{m+1}I_{m,n} \end{aligned}$$

Now, solve for $I_{m,n}$:

$$\begin{aligned} I_{m,n}\left(1 + \frac{n-1}{m+1}\right) &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1}I_{m,n-2} \\ I_{m,n}\left(\frac{m+1+n-1}{m+1}\right) &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x\cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1}I_{m,n-2} \end{aligned}$$

$$I_{m,n}\left(\frac{m+n}{m+1}\right)=\frac{\sin^{m+1}x\cos^{n-1}x}{m+1}+\frac{n-1}{m+1}I_{m,n-2}$$

Multiplying by $\dfrac{m+1}{m+n}$ gives the final formula. ■

Reduction Formula for $\int \sin^m x\cos^n x\,dx$

Reducing n:

$$\int \sin^m x\cos^n x\,dx=\frac{\sin^{m+1}x\cos^{n-1}x}{m+n}+\frac{n-1}{m+n}\int \sin^m x\cos^{n-2}x\,dx$$

Reducing m:

$$\int \sin^m x\cos^n x\,dx=-\frac{\sin^{m-1}x\cos^{n+1}x}{m+n}+\frac{m-1}{m+n}\int \sin^{m-2}x\cos^n x\,dx$$

Example 2.27

Evaluate $\int \sin^2 x\cos^3 x\,dx$.

Solution. We use the formula to reduce the power of $n=3$. Here $m=2, n=3$, so $m+n=5$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sin^2 x\cos^3 x\,dx&=\frac{\sin^3 x\cos^2 x}{5}+\frac{2}{5}\int \sin^2 x\cos^1 x\,dx\\&=\frac{1}{5}\sin^3 x\cos^2 x+\frac{2}{5}\int \sin^2 x\cos x\,dx\\&=\frac{1}{5}\sin^3 x\cos^2 x+\frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{\sin^3 x}{3}\right)+C\\&=\frac{1}{5}\sin^3 x\cos^2 x+\frac{2}{15}\sin^3 x+C\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 2.28

Evaluate $\int \sin^4 x\cos^2 x\,dx$.

Solution. Let's reduce the power of $m=4$. Here $m=4, n=2$, so $m+n=6$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sin^4 x\cos^2 x\,dx&=-\frac{\sin^3 x\cos^3 x}{6}+\frac{3}{6}\int \sin^2 x\cos^2 x\,dx\\&=-\frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x\cos^3 x+\frac{1}{2}\int (\sin x\cos x)^2\,dx\\&=-\frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x\cos^3 x+\frac{1}{2}\int \left(\frac{1}{2}\sin(2x)\right)^2\,dx\\&=-\frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x\cos^3 x+\frac{1}{8}\int \sin^2(2x)\,dx\end{aligned}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x \cos^3 x + \frac{1}{8}\int \frac{1-\cos(4x)}{2}\, dx$$
$$= -\frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x \cos^3 x + \frac{1}{16}\left(x - \frac{1}{4}\sin(4x)\right) + C$$

■

Example 2.29

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 x \cos^4 x\, dx$.

Solution. For definite integrals from 0 to $\pi/2$, the term outside the integral evaluates to zero. Let $I_{m,n} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x\, dx$. The formula simplifies. We will reduce the power of $m = 3$.

$$I_{m,n} = \frac{m-1}{m+n} I_{m-2,n}$$

Applying this for $m = 3, n = 4$:

$$I_{3,4} = \frac{3-1}{3+4} I_{1,4} = \frac{2}{7}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x \cos^4 x\, dx$$
$$= \frac{2}{7}\left[-\frac{\cos^5 x}{5}\right]_0^{\pi/2}$$
$$= \frac{2}{7}\left(-\frac{\cos^5(\pi/2)}{5} - \left(-\frac{\cos^5(0)}{5}\right)\right)$$
$$= \frac{2}{7}\left(0 - \left(-\frac{1^5}{5}\right)\right) = \frac{2}{7}\cdot\frac{1}{5} = \frac{2}{35}$$

■

Example 2.30

Evaluate $\int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x\, dx$.

Solution. Let's reduce the power of $n = 4$. Here $m = 2, n = 4$, so $m + n = 6$.

$$I_{2,4} = \frac{\sin^3 x \cos^3 x}{6} + \frac{3}{6} I_{2,2}$$
$$= \frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x \cos^3 x + \frac{1}{2}\int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x\, dx$$

Now we evaluate $I_{2,2} = \int (\sin x \cos x)^2\, dx = \int (\frac{1}{2}\sin(2x))^2\, dx = \frac{1}{4}\int \sin^2(2x)\, dx$.

$$\frac{1}{4}\int \frac{1-\cos(4x)}{2}\, dx = \frac{1}{8}\left(x - \frac{\sin(4x)}{4}\right)$$

Substituting back:

$$I_{2,4} = \frac{1}{6}\sin^3 x \cos^3 x + \frac{1}{16}x - \frac{1}{64}\sin(4x) + C$$

■

2.7 Reduction Formula for $\int x^m \cos(nx)\, dx$

Derivation

This requires two successive applications of integration by parts.

Derivation. Let $I_m = \int x^m \cos(nx)\, dx$. First integration by parts:

- $u = x^m \implies du = mx^{m-1}dx$
- $dv = \cos(nx)dx \implies v = \frac{1}{n}\sin(nx)$

$$I_m = \frac{1}{n}x^m \sin(nx) - \frac{m}{n}\int x^{m-1}\sin(nx)\, dx$$

Now apply parts to the new integral, $J_{m-1} = \int x^{m-1}\sin(nx)\, dx$.

- $u' = x^{m-1} \implies du' = (m-1)x^{m-2}dx$
- $dv' = \sin(nx)dx \implies v' = -\frac{1}{n}\cos(nx)$

$$\begin{aligned} J_{m-1} &= -\frac{1}{n}x^{m-1}\cos(nx) - \int \left(-\frac{1}{n}\cos(nx)\right)(m-1)x^{m-2}\, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{n}x^{m-1}\cos(nx) + \frac{m-1}{n}\int x^{m-2}\cos(nx)\, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{n}x^{m-1}\cos(nx) + \frac{m-1}{n}I_{m-2} \end{aligned}$$

Substitute this back into the equation for I_m:

$$\begin{aligned} I_m &= \frac{1}{n}x^m \sin(nx) - \frac{m}{n}\left(-\frac{1}{n}x^{m-1}\cos(nx) + \frac{m-1}{n}I_{m-2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n}x^m \sin(nx) + \frac{m}{n^2}x^{m-1}\cos(nx) - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2}I_{m-2} \end{aligned}$$

■

Reduction Formula for $\int x^m \cos(nx)\, dx$

$$\int x^m \cos(nx)\, dx = \frac{x^m \sin(nx)}{n} + \frac{mx^{m-1}\cos(nx)}{n^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2}\int x^{m-2}\cos(nx)\, dx$$

Example 2.31

Evaluate $\int x^2 \cos(3x)\, dx$.

Solution. Here $m = 2, n = 3$.

$$\begin{aligned} \int x^2 \cos(3x)\, dx &= \frac{x^2 \sin(3x)}{3} + \frac{2x\cos(3x)}{3^2} - \frac{2(1)}{3^2}\int x^0 \cos(3x)\, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{3}x^2 \sin(3x) + \frac{2}{9}x\cos(3x) - \frac{2}{9}\int \cos(3x)\, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3}x^2\sin(3x) + \frac{2}{9}x\cos(3x) - \frac{2}{9}\left(\frac{\sin(3x)}{3}\right) + C$$
$$= \frac{1}{3}x^2\sin(3x) + \frac{2}{9}x\cos(3x) - \frac{2}{27}\sin(3x) + C$$

■

Example 2.32

Evaluate $\int x^3\cos(x)\,dx$.

Solution. Here $m = 3, n = 1$.

$$I_3 = \frac{x^3\sin(x)}{1} + \frac{3x^2\cos(x)}{1^2} - \frac{3(2)}{1^2}I_1$$

Where $I_1 = \int x\cos(x)\,dx$. We solve I_1 using parts: $x\sin(x) - \int \sin(x)dx = x\sin(x) + \cos(x)$.

$$I_3 = x^3\sin(x) + 3x^2\cos(x) - 6(x\sin(x) + \cos(x)) + C$$
$$= x^3\sin(x) + 3x^2\cos(x) - 6x\sin(x) - 6\cos(x) + C$$

■

Example 2.33

Evaluate $\int x^4\cos(2x)\,dx$.

Solution. Let $I_m = \int x^m\cos(2x)\,dx$. Here $m = 4, n = 2$.

$$I_4 = \frac{x^4\sin(2x)}{2} + \frac{4x^3\cos(2x)}{4} - \frac{4(3)}{4}I_2 = \frac{1}{2}x^4\sin(2x) + x^3\cos(2x) - 3I_2$$

Now we find I_2:

$$I_2 = \frac{x^2\sin(2x)}{2} + \frac{2x\cos(2x)}{4} - \frac{2(1)}{4}I_0 = \frac{1}{2}x^2\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{2}x\cos(2x) - \frac{1}{2}\int \cos(2x)dx$$
$$I_2 = \frac{1}{2}x^2\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{2}x\cos(2x) - \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x)$$

Substitute back into the expression for I_4:

$$I_4 = \frac{1}{2}x^4\sin(2x) + x^3\cos(2x) - 3\left(\frac{1}{2}x^2\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{2}x\cos(2x) - \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x)\right) + C$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}x^4\sin(2x) + x^3\cos(2x) - \frac{3}{2}x^2\sin(2x) - \frac{3}{2}x\cos(2x) + \frac{3}{4}\sin(2x) + C$$

■

Example 2.34

Evaluate $\int x^3 \sin(2x)\,dx$. (This uses the sister formula for sine).

Solution. The reduction formula for $\int x^m \sin(nx)\,dx$ is:

$$\int x^m \sin(nx)\,dx = -\frac{x^m \cos(nx)}{n} + \frac{mx^{m-1}\sin(nx)}{n^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2}\int x^{m-2}\sin(nx)\,dx$$

Let $J_m = \int x^m \sin(2x)\,dx$. Here $m = 3, n = 2$.

$$J_3 = -\frac{x^3\cos(2x)}{2} + \frac{3x^2\sin(2x)}{4} - \frac{3(2)}{4}J_1 = -\frac{1}{2}x^3\cos(2x) + \frac{3}{4}x^2\sin(2x) - \frac{3}{2}J_1$$

Now find $J_1 = \int x\sin(2x)dx$:

$$J_1 = -\frac{x\cos(2x)}{2} + \frac{1\sin(2x)}{4} - \frac{1(0)}{4}\int x^{-1}\sin(2x)dx = -\frac{1}{2}x\cos(2x) + \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x)$$

Substitute back:

$$\begin{aligned} J_3 &= -\frac{1}{2}x^3\cos(2x) + \frac{3}{4}x^2\sin(2x) - \frac{3}{2}\left(-\frac{1}{2}x\cos(2x) + \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x)\right) + C \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}x^3\cos(2x) + \frac{3}{4}x^2\sin(2x) + \frac{3}{4}x\cos(2x) - \frac{3}{8}\sin(2x) + C \end{aligned}$$

■

2.8 Reduction Formula for $\int \sin^m x \sin nx\,dx$ and $\int \cos^m x \cos nx\,dx$

Derivation

The derivations for these two are very similar and algebraically intensive, requiring two careful applications of integration by parts. We will derive the formula for $I_{m,n} = \int \sin^m x\sin(nx)\,dx$. The derivation for $I_{m,n} = \int \cos^m x\cos nx\,dx$ is similar.

Derivation for Sine-Sine case. First integration by parts:

- $u = \sin^m x \implies du = m\sin^{m-1}x\cos x\,dx$
- $dv = \sin(nx)dx \implies v = -\frac{1}{n}\cos(nx)$

$$I_{m,n} = -\frac{\sin^m x\cos(nx)}{n} + \frac{m}{n}\int \sin^{m-1}x\cos x\cos(nx)\,dx$$

Second integration by parts on the new integral:

- $u' = \sin^{m-1}x\cos x \implies du' = \left((m-1)\sin^{m-2}x\cos^2 x - \sin^m x\right)dx$
- $dv' = \cos(nx)dx \implies v' = \frac{1}{n}\sin(nx)$

The du' simplifies: $du' = ((m-1)\sin^{m-2} x(1-\sin^2 x) - \sin^m x)dx = ((m-1)\sin^{m-2} x - m\sin^m x)dx$. The new integral becomes $\int u'dv' = u'v' - \int v'du'$:

$$\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin(nx)}{n} - \frac{1}{n}\int \sin(nx)\left((m-1)\sin^{m-2} x - m\sin^m x\right)dx$$

Substitute this back into the equation for $I_{m,n}$:

$$\begin{aligned} I_{m,n} = &-\frac{\sin^m x\cos(nx)}{n} + \frac{m}{n}\Bigg[\frac{\sin^{m-1} x\cos x\sin(nx)}{n} \\ &- \frac{m-1}{n}\int \sin^{m-2} x \sin(nx)dx + \frac{m}{n}\int \sin^m x\sin(nx)dx\Bigg] \\ I_{m,n} = &-\frac{\sin^m x\cos(nx)}{n} + \frac{m\sin^{m-1} x\cos x\sin(nx)}{n^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2}I_{m-2,n} + \frac{m^2}{n^2}I_{m,n} \end{aligned}$$

Solving for $I_{m,n}$:

$$I_{m,n}\left(1-\frac{m^2}{n^2}\right) = -\frac{n\sin^m x\cos(nx)}{n^2} + \frac{m\sin^{m-1} x\cos x\sin(nx)}{n^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2}I_{m-2,n}$$

$$I_{m,n}\left(\frac{n^2-m^2}{n^2}\right) = \frac{m\sin^{m-1} x\cos x\sin(nx) - n\sin^m x\cos(nx)}{n^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2}I_{m-2,n}$$

Multiplying by $\dfrac{n^2}{n^2-m^2}$ gives the final result. ■

Reduction Formulas

For $n^2 \neq m^2$:

$$\int \sin^m x\sin(nx)dx =$$

$$\frac{m\sin^{m-1} x\cos x\sin(nx) - n\sin^m x\cos(nx)}{n^2-m^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2-m^2}\int \sin^{m-2} x\sin(nx)dx$$

$$\int \cos^m x\cos(nx)dx =$$

$$\frac{-m\cos^{m-1} x\sin x\cos(nx) + n\cos^m x\sin(nx)}{n^2-m^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2-m^2}\int \cos^{m-2} x\cos(nx)dx$$

Example 2.35

Evaluate $\int \sin^2 x\sin(4x)\,dx$.

Solution. Here $m = 2, n = 4$. So $n^2 - m^2 = 16 - 4 = 12$.

$$I_{2,4} = \frac{2\sin x\cos x\sin(4x) - 4\sin^2 x\cos(4x)}{12} - \frac{2(1)}{12}\int \sin^0 x\sin(4x)dx$$

$$= \frac{\sin(2x)\sin(4x) - 4\sin^2 x\cos(4x)}{12} - \frac{1}{6}\int \sin(4x)dx$$
$$= \frac{\sin(2x)\sin(4x) - 4\sin^2 x\cos(4x)}{12} - \frac{1}{6}\left(-\frac{\cos(4x)}{4}\right) + C$$
$$= \frac{1}{12}\left(\sin(2x)\sin(4x) - 4\sin^2 x\cos(4x)\right) + \frac{1}{24}\cos(4x) + C$$

■

Example 2.36

Evaluate $\int \cos^2 x \cos(3x)\, dx$.

Solution. Here $m = 2, n = 3$. So $n^2 - m^2 = 9 - 4 = 5$.

$$I_{2,3} = \frac{-2\cos x\sin x\cos(3x) + 3\cos^2 x\sin(3x)}{5} - \frac{2(1)}{5}\int \cos^0 x\cos(3x)dx$$
$$= \frac{-\sin(2x)\cos(3x) + 3\cos^2 x\sin(3x)}{5} - \frac{2}{5}\int \cos(3x)dx$$
$$= \frac{1}{5}(-\sin(2x)\cos(3x) + 3\cos^2 x\sin(3x)) - \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{\sin(3x)}{3}\right) + C$$
$$= \frac{1}{5}(-\sin(2x)\cos(3x) + 3\cos^2 x\sin(3x)) - \frac{2}{15}\sin(3x) + C$$

■

Example 2.37

Evaluate $\int \sin^3 x \cos(5x)\, dx$. (This requires the sister formula for $\sin^m x\cos(nx)$).

Solution. The formula is: $\int \sin^m x\cos(nx)dx =$

$$\frac{m\sin^{m-1} x\cos x\cos(nx) + n\sin^m x\sin(nx)}{n^2 - m^2} - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2 - m^2}\int \sin^{m-2} x\cos(nx)dx$$

Here $m = 3, n = 5$, so $n^2 - m^2 = 25 - 9 = 16$.

$$I_{3,5} = \frac{3\sin^2 x\cos x\cos(5x) + 5\sin^3 x\sin(5x)}{16} - \frac{3(2)}{16}\int \sin^1 x\cos(5x)dx$$
$$= \frac{1}{16}(3\sin^2 x\cos x\cos(5x) + 5\sin^3 x\sin(5x)) - \frac{3}{8}\int \sin x\cos(5x)dx$$

We solve the final integral using the product-to-sum formula $\sin A\cos B = \frac{1}{2}(\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B))$:

$$\int \sin x\cos(5x)dx = \frac{1}{2}\int(\sin(6x) + \sin(-4x))dx = \frac{1}{2}\int(\sin(6x) - \sin(4x))dx$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{\cos(6x)}{6} + \frac{\cos(4x)}{4}\right)$$

Substituting back gives the final, lengthy answer. ■

Example 2.38

Evaluate $\int \cos^3 x \sin(2x)\, dx$.

Solution. A direct approach is often easier than a complex reduction formula here.

$$\int \cos^3 x \sin(2x)\, dx = \int \cos^3 x (2 \sin x \cos x)\, dx = 2 \int \sin x \cos^4 x\, dx$$

This is now a simple substitution. Let $u = \cos x$, so $du = -\sin x\, dx$.

$$2 \int u^4(-du) = -2 \int u^4\, du = -2\frac{u^5}{5} + C = -\frac{2}{5}\cos^5 x + C$$

This example shows that while reduction formulas are powerful, sometimes a more direct trigonometric identity or substitution is more efficient. ■

2.9 Exercises on Reduction Formulas based on Chapter II

Solve the following problems using Reduction Formulae.

Exercise 2.1

1. $\int \sin^5 x\, dx$	2. $\int \cos^6 x\, dx$	3. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^8 x\, dx$
4. $\int_0^{\pi} \cos^4 x\, dx$	5. $\int \sin^7 x\, dx$	6. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^9 x\, dx$
7. $\int \tan^5 x\, dx$	8. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^6 x\, dx$	9. $\int \cot^6 x\, dx$
10. $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \cot^3 x\, dx$	11. $\int \sec^6 x\, dx$	12. $\int \csc^5 x\, dx$
13. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^5 x\, dx$	14. $\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \csc^3 x\, dx$	15. $\int \sin^3 x \cos^5 x\, dx$
16. $\int \sin^4 x \cos^4 x\, dx$	17. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6 x \cos^4 x\, dx$	18. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^5 x \cos^3 x\, dx$
19. $\int x^4 \sin(x)\, dx$	20. $\int x^3 \cos(2x)\, dx$	21. $\int x^5 \cos(x)\, dx$
22. $\int_0^{\pi} x^2 \sin(x)\, dx$	23. $\int \sin^2 x \sin(3x)\, dx$	24. $\int \cos^3 x \cos(2x)\, dx$
25. $\int \sin^3 x \sin(4x)\, dx$	26. $\int \cos^2 x \cos(4x)\, dx$	

Chapter 3

Analysis of the Definite Integral and Curve Rectification

Having mastered various techniques of indefinite integration, this unit shifts our focus to the theory and power of the **definite integral**. We will explore its fundamental definition as a limit of sums and uncover its profound connection to differentiation through the two parts of the **Fundamental Theorem of Calculus**. Finally, we will apply these powerful theoretical tools to a key geometric problem: **rectification**, the process of calculating the exact length of a plane curve.

Definite Integrals: Defined.

An indefinite integral, $\int f(x)\,dx$, represents a family of functions, known as the antiderivatives of $f(x)$. In contrast, a **definite integral**, denoted by

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

is a single numerical value. It formally represents the limit of a Riemann sum, which can be geometrically interpreted as the signed area of the region bounded by the graph of $y = f(x)$, the x-axis, and the vertical lines $x = a$ and $x = b$. The values a and b are called the **lower and upper limits of integration**, respectively.

The evaluation of definite integrals is fundamentally linked to indefinite integrals through the **Fundamental Theorem of Calculus We shall take its proof later in this chapter**. This theorem states that if $F(x)$ is any antiderivative of a continuous function $f(x)$ on the interval $[a, b]$ (i.e., $F'(x) = f(x)$), then:

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a)$$

This relationship is the cornerstone for deriving the essential properties of definite integrals.

3.1 Fundamental Properties of Definite Integrals

3.1.1 Property 1: Reversing the Limits of Integration

Property 1

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = -\int_b^a f(x)\,dx$$

Proof. Let $F(x)$ be an antiderivative of $f(x)$. By the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx &= F(b) - F(a)\\ &= -(F(a) - F(b))\\ &= -\int_b^a f(x)\,dx\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.1

Given that $\int_1^3 x^3\,dx = 20$, find the value of $\int_3^1 x^3\,dx$.

Solution. Using Property 1 directly, we can state that:

$$\int_3^1 x^3\,dx = -\int_1^3 x^3\,dx = -20$$

■

Exercise 3.1

1. If $\int_0^\pi \sin(x)\,dx = 2$, what is $\int_\pi^0 \sin(x)\,dx$?
2. Evaluate both $\int_1^e \frac{1}{x}\,dx$ and $\int_e^1 \frac{1}{x}\,dx$ to verify the property.
3. Without calculating, explain why $\int_5^2 f(x)\,dx + \int_2^5 f(x)\,dx = 0$.

3.1.2 Property 2: Zero Interval Length

Property 2

$$\int_a^a f(x)\,dx = 0$$

Proof. Let $F(x)$ be an antiderivative of $f(x)$. Applying the Fundamental Theorem:

$$\int_a^a f(x)\,dx = F(a) - F(a) = 0$$

This aligns with the geometric interpretation that an area of zero width is zero. ■

Example 3.2

Evaluate $\int_{10}^{10} (e^{x^2} \ln(x) + \tan(x))\, dx$.

Solution. The limits of integration are identical ($a = 10$). Therefore, regardless of the complexity of the integrand, the value of the definite integral is zero.

$$\int_{10}^{10} (e^{x^2} \ln(x) + \tan(x))\, dx = 0$$

■

Exercise 3.2

1. Evaluate $\int_{\pi}^{\pi} \frac{\sin^2(x)\cos(x)}{x^2+1}\, dx$.
2. If $F'(x) = f(x)$, show using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus that $\int_k^k f(t)\, dt = 0$ for any constant k.
3. Find the value of c such that $\int_c^5 (x^3 - 8)\, dx = 0$. (There are two possible answers.)

3.1.3 Property 3: Change of Variable (Dummy Variable)

Property 3

The value of a definite integral is independent of the variable of integration.

$$\int_a^b f(x)\, dx = \int_a^b f(t)\, dt = \int_a^b f(u)\, du$$

Proof. Let F be an antiderivative of f. Then the evaluation of the integral depends only on the function F and the limits a and b.

$$\int_a^b f(x)\, dx = F(b) - F(a)$$

$$\int_a^b f(t)\, dt = F(b) - F(a)$$

Since both expressions are equal to $F(b) - F(a)$, they are equal to each other. ■

Example 3.3

Show that $\int_0^1 x^2\, dx = \int_0^1 t^2\, dt$.

Solution. We evaluate both integrals independently.

$$\int_0^1 x^2\, dx = \left[\frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^1 = \frac{1^3}{3} - \frac{0^3}{3} = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$\int_0^1 t^2\, dt = \left[\frac{t^3}{3}\right]_0^1 = \frac{1^3}{3} - \frac{0^3}{3} = \frac{1}{3}$$

Since both evaluate to the same number, the property holds. ■

Exercise 3.3

1. If you know $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos(\theta)\, d\theta = 1$, what is the value of $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos(z)\, dz$?
2. Does $\int_0^1 x\, dx = \int_0^1 y\, dy$? Justify your answer.
3. Explain in one sentence why changing the variable of integration does not change the value of a definite integral.

3.1.4 Property 4: Constant Multiple Rule

Property 4

For any constant c,

$$\int_a^b c \cdot f(x)\, dx = c \int_a^b f(x)\, dx$$

Proof. Let $F(x)$ be an antiderivative of $f(x)$. By the rules of differentiation, an antiderivative of $c \cdot f(x)$ is $c \cdot F(x)$. Applying the Fundamental Theorem:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b c \cdot f(x)\, dx &= [c \cdot F(x)]_a^b \\ &= c \cdot F(b) - c \cdot F(a) \\ &= c(F(b) - F(a)) \\ &= c \int_a^b f(x)\, dx\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.4

Evaluate $\int_0^2 10x^4\, dx$.

Solution. We factor out the constant 10.

$$\int_0^2 10x^4\, dx = 10 \int_0^2 x^4\, dx = 10 \left[\frac{x^5}{5}\right]_0^2 = 10\left(\frac{2^5}{5} - \frac{0^5}{5}\right) = 10\left(\frac{32}{5}\right) = 64$$

■

Exercise 3.4

1. Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi} 7\cos(x)\, dx$.

2. If $\int_1^5 f(x)\,dx = 12$, find $\int_1^5 -3f(x)\,dx$.
3. Show that $\int_a^b k\,dx = k(b-a)$ by treating k as $k \cdot 1$.

3.1.5 Property 5: Sum and Difference Rule

Property 5

$$\int_a^b [f(x) \pm g(x)]\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \pm \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$$

Proof. Let $F(x)$ and $G(x)$ be antiderivatives of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ respectively. Then an antiderivative of $f(x) \pm g(x)$ is $F(x) \pm G(x)$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b [f(x) \pm g(x)]\,dx &= [F(x) \pm G(x)]_a^b \\ &= (F(b) \pm G(b)) - (F(a) \pm G(a)) \\ &= (F(b) - F(a)) \pm (G(b) - G(a)) \\ &= \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \pm \int_a^b g(x)\,dx\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.5

Evaluate $\int_0^1 (e^x - x)\,dx$.

Solution. We split the integral into two parts.

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 (e^x - x)\,dx &= \int_0^1 e^x\,dx - \int_0^1 x\,dx \\ &= [e^x]_0^1 - \left[\frac{x^2}{2}\right]_0^1 \\ &= (e^1 - e^0) - \left(\frac{1^2}{2} - \frac{0^2}{2}\right) = (e-1) - \frac{1}{2} = e - \frac{3}{2}\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 3.5

1. Evaluate $\int_1^4 \left(\frac{1}{x} + 3\sqrt{x}\right)\,dx$.
2. If $\int_0^2 f(x)dx = 5$ and $\int_0^2 g(x)dx = -3$, find $\int_0^2 (2f(x) - 4g(x))\,dx$.
3. Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi/2} (\cos\theta + \sin\theta)\,d\theta$.

3.1.6 Property 6: Additivity of Intervals

Property 6

If f is continuous on an interval containing a, b, and c, then

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^b f(x)\,dx$$

Proof. Let $F(x)$ be an antiderivative of $f(x)$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_a^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^b f(x)\,dx &= (F(c) - F(a)) + (F(b) - F(c)) \\
&= F(c) - F(a) + F(b) - F(c) \\
&= F(b) - F(a) \\
&= \int_a^b f(x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.6

Evaluate $\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx$ where $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ 3x^2 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$.

Solution. The function definition changes at $x = 1$, so we must split the integral there.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx &= \int_0^1 f(x)\,dx + \int_1^3 f(x)\,dx \\
&= \int_0^1 2\,dx + \int_1^3 3x^2\,dx \\
&= [2x]_0^1 + [x^3]_1^3 \\
&= (2(1) - 2(0)) + (3^3 - 1^3) = 2 + (27 - 1) = 2 + 26 = 28
\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 3.6

1. Evaluate $\int_{-1}^2 |x - 1|\,dx$.
2. If $\int_{-5}^2 f(x)dx = 4$ and $\int_{-5}^6 f(x)dx = -1$, find $\int_2^6 f(x)\,dx$.
3. Verify that $\int_0^\pi \cos(x)\,dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos(x)\,dx + \int_{\pi/2}^\pi \cos(x)\,dx$.

3.1.7 Property 7: A Fundamental Substitution Property

Property 7

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(a+b-x)\,dx$$

Proof. We evaluate the right-hand side using a substitution. Let $t = a+b-x$. Then $x = a+b-t$ and $dx = -dt$. We must also transform the limits of integration:

- When $x = a$, $t = a+b-a = b$.
- When $x = b$, $t = a+b-b = a$.

Substituting these into the right-hand side integral:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_a^b f(a+b-x)\,dx &= \int_b^a f(t)(-dt) \\
&= -\int_b^a f(t)\,dt \\
&= \int_a^b f(t)\,dt \quad \text{(using Property 1)} \\
&= \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \quad \text{(using Property 3)}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.7

Evaluate $I = \displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^n x}{\sin^n x + \cos^n x}\,dx$.

Solution. This integral is very difficult to solve directly. Instead, we apply Property 7. Here $a = 0, b = \pi/2$, so $a+b-x = \pi/2 - x$.

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^n(\pi/2 - x)}{\sin^n(\pi/2-x) + \cos^n(\pi/2-x)}\,dx$$

Using $\sin(\pi/2 - x) = \cos x$ and $\cos(\pi/2 - x) = \sin x$, we get:

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos^n x}{\cos^n x + \sin^n x}\,dx$$

Now add the two expressions for I:

$$2I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^n x}{\sin^n x + \cos^n x}\,dx + \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos^n x}{\cos^n x + \sin^n x}\,dx$$

$$2I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^n x + \cos^n x}{\sin^n x + \cos^n x}\,dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} 1\,dx = [x]_0^{\pi/2} = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Therefore, $2I = \pi/2$, which means $I = \pi/4$. ■

Example 3.8

Evaluate $I = \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{7-x}}\,dx$.

Solution. This integral is difficult to solve directly. We apply Property 7. Here $a = 2, b = 5$, so $a + b - x = 7 - x$.

$$I = \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{7-x}}\,dx \tag{3.1}$$

Applying the property, we replace x with $7 - x$:

$$I = \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{7-x}}{\sqrt{7-x} + \sqrt{7-(7-x)}}\,dx$$

$$I = \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{7-x}}{\sqrt{7-x} + \sqrt{x}}\,dx \tag{3.2}$$

Now, we add equation (3.1) and equation (3.2):

$$2I = \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{7-x}}\,dx + \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{7-x}}{\sqrt{7-x} + \sqrt{x}}\,dx$$

$$2I = \int_2^5 \frac{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{7-x}}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{7-x}}\,dx$$

$$2I = \int_2^5 1\,dx = [x]_2^5 = 5 - 2 = 3$$

Therefore, $2I = 3$, which means $I = 3/2$. ■

Example 3.9

Evaluate $I = \int_0^\pi x \sin x\,dx$ using properties.

Solution. Although this can be solved with integration by parts, Property 7 provides an elegant alternative. Here $a = 0, b = \pi$, so $a + b - x = \pi - x$.

$$I = \int_0^\pi x \sin x\,dx \tag{3.3}$$

Applying the property:

$$I = \int_0^\pi (\pi - x)\sin(\pi - x)\,dx$$

Using the identity $\sin(\pi - x) = \sin x,$ we get:

$$I = \int_0^\pi (\pi - x)\sin x\,dx \tag{3.4}$$

$$I = \int_0^\pi \pi \sin x\,dx - \int_0^\pi x \sin x\,dx$$

Notice that the second term is the original integral I.

$$I = \pi \int_0^\pi \sin x\,dx - I$$

Now, solve for I:

$$2I = \pi \int_0^{\pi} \sin x \, dx$$
$$2I = \pi[-\cos x]_0^{\pi}$$
$$2I = \pi(-\cos(\pi) - (-\cos(0)))$$
$$2I = \pi(-(-1) - (-1)) = \pi(1+1) = 2\pi$$

Therefore, $I = \pi$. ■

Exercise 3.7

1. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\cot x}}{\sqrt{\cot x} + \sqrt{\tan x}} \, dx$.
2. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_1^{2} \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{3-x} + \sqrt{x}} \, dx$.
3. Show that $\displaystyle\int_0^{a} \frac{f(x)}{f(x) + f(a-x)} \, dx = \frac{a}{2}$.

3.1.8 Property 8: Integration of Even and Odd Functions

Property 8

For a symmetric interval $[-a, a]$:

1. If $f(x)$ is an **even** function ($f(-x) = f(x)$), then $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^a f(x)\,dx$.
2. If $f(x)$ is an **odd** function ($f(-x) = -f(x)$), then $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = 0$.

Proof. Using Property 6, we split the integral at $c = 0$:

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = \int_{-a}^{0} f(x)\,dx + \int_0^a f(x)\,dx$$

Consider the first term, $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{0} f(x)\,dx$. Let $x = -u$, so $dx = -du$. When $x = -a$, $u = a$. When $x = 0$, $u = 0$. The integral becomes:

$$\int_a^0 f(-u)(-du) = -\int_a^0 f(-u)\,du = \int_0^a f(-u)\,du$$

Now we consider the two cases:

1. **If f is even,** $f(-u) = f(u)$. The first term becomes $\displaystyle\int_0^a f(u)\,du$. So,
$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = \int_0^a f(u)\,du + \int_0^a f(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^a f(x)\,dx$$
2. **If f is odd,** $f(-u) = -f(u)$. The first term becomes $\displaystyle\int_0^a -f(u)\,du = -\int_0^a f(u)\,du$. So,
$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = -\int_0^a f(u)\,du + \int_0^a f(x)\,dx = 0$$

■

Example 3.10

Evaluate $\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} (x^2 \sin x + \cos x)\, dx$.

Solution. We can split the integral:

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} x^2 \sin x\, dx + \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos x\, dx$$

The first integrand, $f(x) = x^2 \sin x$, is an odd function because $f(-x) = (-x)^2 \sin(-x) = x^2(-\sin x) = -f(x)$. Since the interval is symmetric, this integral is 0. The second integrand, $g(x) = \cos x$, is an even function.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{The integral} &= 0 + 2\int_{0}^{\pi} \cos x\, dx \\ &= 2[\sin x]_0^{\pi} = 2(\sin(\pi) - \sin(0)) = 2(0-0) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.11

Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{1} \frac{\tan x}{1+x^2+x^4}\, dx$.

Solution. Let's analyze the integrand $f(x) = \frac{\tan x}{1+x^2+x^4}$. We check if it is even or odd by evaluating $f(-x)$.

$$f(-x) = \frac{\tan(-x)}{1+(-x)^2+(-x)^4} = \frac{-\tan x}{1+x^2+x^4} = -f(x)$$

Since $f(x)$ is an odd function and the integral is over a symmetric interval $[-1, 1]$, the value of the integral is zero.

$$\int_{-1}^{1} \frac{\tan x}{1+x^2+x^4}\, dx = 0$$

■

Example 3.12

Evaluate $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} (\sin^7 \theta + |\theta| + \cos\theta)\, d\theta$.

Solution. The integral is over a symmetric interval. We can split it into three parts:

$$\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \sin^7 \theta\, d\theta + \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} |\theta|\, d\theta + \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \cos\theta\, d\theta$$

We analyze each part:

- $f_1(\theta) = \sin^7 \theta$. Since $\sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta$, we have $(\sin(-\theta))^7 = (-\sin\theta)^7 = -\sin^7\theta$. This is an **odd** function, so its integral is 0.

- $f_2(\theta) = |\theta|$. Since $|-\theta| = |\theta|$, this is an **even** function.
- $f_3(\theta) = \cos\theta$. Since $\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$, this is an **even** function.

The integral simplifies to:

$$0 + 2\int_0^{\pi/2} |\theta|\,d\theta + 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos\theta\,d\theta$$

On the interval $[0, \pi/2]$, $|\theta| = \theta$.

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \theta\,d\theta + 2[\sin\theta]_0^{\pi/2} \\
&= 2\left[\frac{\theta^2}{2}\right]_0^{\pi/2} + 2(\sin(\pi/2) - \sin(0)) \\
&= 2\left(\frac{(\pi/2)^2}{2} - 0\right) + 2(1-0) \\
&= 2\left(\frac{\pi^2/4}{2}\right) + 2 = 2\left(\frac{\pi^2}{8}\right) + 2 = \frac{\pi^2}{4} + 2
\end{aligned}$$

■

Exercise 3.8

1. Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{1} (x^5 - 3x^3 + 2x)\,dx$.
2. Evaluate $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} (x^2 + \cos x)\,dx$.
3. Is the function $f(x) = e^x$ even, odd, or neither? Use this to explain why you cannot simplify $\int_{-1}^{1} e^x\,dx$ with this property.

3.2 The Definite Integral as a Limit of a Sum

The concept of the definite integral arises from the problem of finding the exact area under a curve. For simple geometric shapes like rectangles, triangles, and circles, we have straightforward area formulas. However, finding the area of a region bounded by a curve, where the top boundary is not a straight line, requires a more sophisticated approach.

The strategy is to approximate this complex area using a collection of simpler shapes that we know how to measure: **rectangles**.

The process involves these key steps:

Divide: The interval $[a, b]$ on the x-axis is divided into n smaller subintervals of equal width, denoted by Δx. The width of each subinterval is:

$$\Delta x = \frac{b-a}{n}$$

Approximate: Over each of these small subintervals, we construct a rectangle whose height is determined by the function's value at a specific point within that subinterval. This point is called a **sample point**, denoted by x_i^*. Common choices for the sample point are the left endpoint, right endpoint, or midpoint of the subinterval.

Sum: The area of each individual rectangle is its height times its width: $A_i = f(x_i^*) \cdot \Delta x$. We then sum the areas of all n rectangles to get an approximation of the total area under the curve. This sum is known as a **Riemann Sum**:

$$\text{Area} \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*) \cdot \Delta x$$

From Approximation to Exactness: The Limit

The approximation becomes more accurate as we increase the number of rectangles, n. As n gets larger, the width of each rectangle, Δx, gets smaller. The "gaps" between the tops of the rectangles and the curve begin to disappear.

To find the *exact* area, we take the limit of this Riemann Sum as the number of rectangles approaches infinity ($n \to \infty$). In this limit, the approximation error vanishes, and the sum converges to the precise value of the area.

The Formal Definition

This limiting process gives us the formal definition of the definite integral. If we choose the right endpoint of each interval as our sample point, then $x_i^* = x_i = a + i \cdot \Delta x$. The definition becomes:

Definition of the Definite Integral

The definite integral of a function $f(x)$ from a to b is defined as the limit of the Riemann sum:

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i) \cdot \Delta x$$

where $\Delta x = \dfrac{b-a}{n}$ and $x_i = a + i \cdot \Delta x$.

Understanding the Notation

The notation of the definite integral is itself a reflection of this limiting process:

- The integral sign $\int$ is an elongated "S", standing for "sum".
- The term $f(x)$ represents the height of each infinitesimally thin rectangle.
- The term dx represents the infinitesimal width of each rectangle, which is the limit of Δx as $n \to \infty$.

Figure 3.1 illustrates the approximation of the area under the curve $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$. The true area is calculated with approximation using $n = 8$ rectangles shown in red. As n increases, the red area will converge to the exact area bounded by the curve and the $x-$axis.

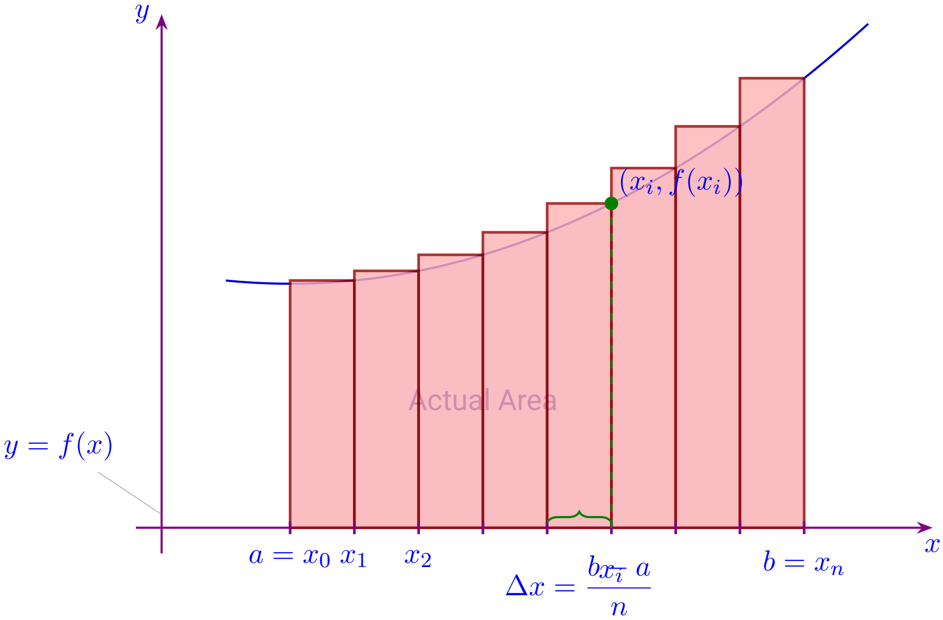

Figure 3.1. An elaborative view of the Riemann sum. The definite integral is the limit of the sum of the areas of the red rectangles as their number n approaches infinity, which perfectly converges to the area of the blue shaded region.

Example 3.13

Evaluate $\int_0^2 (3x+1)\,dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Solution. For this integral, we have $a = 0, b = 2$, so $\Delta x = \frac{2-0}{n} = \frac{2}{n}$. The right endpoint of the i-th subinterval is $x_i = a + i\Delta x = 0 + i\frac{2}{n} = \frac{2i}{n}$. The function value at this point is $f(x_i) = 3(\frac{2i}{n}) + 1 = \frac{6i}{n} + 1$. The definite integral is the limit of the Riemann sum:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^2 (3x+1)\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{6i}{n} + 1\right)\frac{2}{n} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2}{n}\left(\frac{6}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i + \sum_{i=1}^{n} 1\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2}{n}\left(\frac{6}{n}\cdot\frac{n(n+1)}{2} + n\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2}{n}(3(n+1)+n) = \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2(4n+3)}{n} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \left(8 + \frac{6}{n}\right) = 8
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.14

Evaluate $\int_1^3 x^2\,dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Solution. Here, $a=1, b=3$, so $\Delta x = \frac{3-1}{n} = \frac{2}{n}$ and $x_i = 1 + i\frac{2}{n}$. The function value is $f(x_i) = (1+\frac{2i}{n})^2 = 1 + \frac{4i}{n} + \frac{4i^2}{n^2}$. The definite integral is:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_1^3 x^2\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(1 + \frac{4i}{n} + \frac{4i^2}{n^2}\right)\frac{2}{n} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2}{n}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} 1 + \frac{4}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i + \frac{4}{n^2}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2}{n}\left(n + \frac{4}{n}\frac{n(n+1)}{2} + \frac{4}{n^2}\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(2 + \frac{4(n+1)}{n} + \frac{4(2n^2+3n+1)}{3n^2}\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(2 + 4\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right) + \frac{4}{3}\left(2 + \frac{3}{n} + \frac{1}{n^2}\right)\right) \\
&= 2 + 4(1) + \frac{4}{3}(2) = 6 + \frac{8}{3} = \frac{26}{3}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.15

Evaluate $\int_0^4 (x^2 - 2x)\,dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Solution. For this integral, $a=0, b=4$, so $\Delta x = 4/n$ and $x_i = 4i/n$. The function value is $f(x_i) = (\frac{4i}{n})^2 - 2(\frac{4i}{n}) = \frac{16i^2}{n^2} - \frac{8i}{n}$. The definite integral is:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^4 (x^2-2x)\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{16i^2}{n^2} - \frac{8i}{n}\right)\frac{4}{n} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\frac{64}{n^3}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2 - \frac{32}{n^2}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\frac{64}{n^3}\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} - \frac{32}{n^2}\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\frac{32}{3}\frac{2n^2+3n+1}{n^2} - 16\frac{n+1}{n}\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\frac{32}{3}\left(2+\frac{3}{n}+\frac{1}{n^2}\right) - 16\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)\right) \\
&= \frac{32}{3}(2) - 16(1) = \frac{64}{3} - 16 = \frac{16}{3}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.16

Evaluate $\int_0^1 x^3\,dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Solution. Here, $a = 0, b = 1$, so $\Delta x = 1/n$ and $x_i = i/n$. The function value is $f(x_i) = (i/n)^3 = i^3/n^3$. The definite integral is:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^1 x^3\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{i^3}{n^3}\right)\frac{1}{n} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n^4} \sum_{i=1}^{n} i^3 \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n^4} \left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right)^2 \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n^4} \frac{n^2(n+1)^2}{4} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{4} \frac{(n+1)^2}{n^2} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{4}\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{4}(1)^2 = \frac{1}{4}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.17

Evaluate $\int_2^4 5\,dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Solution. Here, $f(x) = 5, a = 2, b = 4$. We have $\Delta x = (4-2)/n = 2/n$. The function value is constant, $f(x_i) = 5$ for all i. The definite integral is:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_2^4 5\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (5)\left(\frac{2}{n}\right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{10}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} 1 \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{10}{n}(n) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} 10 = 10
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.18

Evaluate $\int_0^1 e^x\,dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Solution. To evaluate the integral using the definition as a limit of a sum, we first identify the components for the interval $[0, 1]$. The width of each of the n subintervals is

$\Delta x = \frac{1-0}{n} = \frac{1}{n}$. Using the right endpoint of each subinterval as the sample point, we have $x_i = a + i\Delta x = 0 + i\frac{1}{n} = \frac{i}{n}$. The function value at this point is $f(x_i) = e^{i/n}$.

The definite integral is the limit of the Riemann sum:

$$\int_0^1 e^x \, dx = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} e^{i/n} \cdot \frac{1}{n}$$

We can factor out the constant $\frac{1}{n}$ from the sum. The remaining sum is a finite geometric series: $\sum_{i=1}^{n}(e^{1/n})^i$. This series has a first term $a_1 = e^{1/n}$ and a common ratio $r = e^{1/n}$. Using the formula for the sum of a geometric series, we get:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n}(e^{1/n})^i = e^{1/n}\frac{(e^{1/n})^n - 1}{e^{1/n} - 1} = e^{1/n}\frac{e-1}{e^{1/n}-1}$$

Substituting this back into our limit expression:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n}\left((e-1)\frac{e^{1/n}}{e^{1/n}-1}\right) = (e-1)\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{e^{1/n}}{n(e^{1/n}-1)}$$

To evaluate this limit, we can rearrange the terms and let $h = 1/n$. As $n \to \infty$, $h \to 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}(e-1)\lim_{n\to\infty} e^{1/n} \cdot \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1/n}{e^{1/n}-1} &= (e-1)\left(\lim_{h\to 0} e^h\right)\cdot\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{h}{e^h-1}\right)\\ &= (e-1)\cdot(e^0)\cdot\left(\frac{1}{\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{e^h-1}{h}}\right)\\ &= (e-1)\cdot(1)\cdot\left(\frac{1}{1}\right) = e-1\end{aligned}$$

■

Arithmetic-Geometric Series Sum: The sum of a series of the form $\sum_{k=1}^{n}(a+(k-1)d)r^{k-1}$ has a closed form. For our specific case, we will need the sum $S_n = \sum_{i=1}^{n} i \cdot r^i$. The formula is:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} i \cdot r^i = \frac{r(1-r^n)}{(1-r)^2} - \frac{nr^{n+1}}{1-r}$$

Example 3.19

Evaluate $\int_0^2 xe^x \, dx$ as a limit of a sum.

Warning: Advanced Problem

This evaluation is significantly more complex than standard Riemann sum problems. It requires the formula for the sum of an **arithmetic-geometric series**, which is not typically covered in introductory calculus. The standard method for this integral is integration by parts.

Solution. For the integral of $f(x) = xe^x$ on the interval $[0, 2]$, we define the components of the Riemann sum. The width of each subinterval is $\Delta x = \frac{2-0}{n} = \frac{2}{n}$. The right endpoint of the i-th subinterval is $x_i = 0 + i \cdot \frac{2}{n} = \frac{2i}{n}$. The function value at this point is $f(x_i) = x_i e^{x_i} = \frac{2i}{n} e^{2i/n}$.

The definite integral is defined as the limit of the Riemann sum:

$$\int_0^2 xe^x\,dx = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{2i}{n} e^{2i/n}\right) \frac{2}{n}$$

We can factor out the terms that do not depend on the summation index i:

$$= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{4}{n^2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} i \cdot (e^{2/n})^i$$

The sum is an arithmetic-geometric series of the form $\sum_{i=1}^{n} i \cdot r^i$ with a common ratio $r = e^{2/n}$. Using the formula for such a sum, we get:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=1}^{n} i \cdot (e^{2/n})^i &= \frac{e^{2/n}(1-(e^{2/n})^n)}{(1-e^{2/n})^2} - \frac{n(e^{2/n})^{n+1}}{1-e^{2/n}} \\
&= \frac{e^{2/n}(1-e^2)}{(1-e^{2/n})^2} - \frac{ne^{2(n+1)/n}}{1-e^{2/n}} \\
&= \frac{e^{2/n}(1-e^2)}{(e^{2/n}-1)^2} + \frac{ne^2e^{2/n}}{e^{2/n}-1}
\end{aligned}$$

Now, we substitute this back into the limit expression and multiply by $\frac{4}{n^2}$:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(\frac{4e^{2/n}(1-e^2)}{n^2(e^{2/n}-1)^2} + \frac{4ne^2e^{2/n}}{n^2(e^{2/n}-1)} \right)$$

Let's analyze each term separately by letting $h = 2/n$, so $n = 2/h$. As $n \to \infty$, $h \to 0$. The first term becomes:

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{4e^h(1-e^2)}{(2/h)^2(e^h-1)^2} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{4h^2e^h(1-e^2)}{4(e^h-1)^2} = (1-e^2) \lim_{h\to 0} e^h \left(\frac{h}{e^h-1}\right)^2 = (1-e^2)\cdot 1 \cdot (1)^2 = 1-e^2$$

The second term becomes:

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{4(2/h)e^2e^h}{(2/h)^2(e^h-1)} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{8e^2e^h/h}{4(e^h-1)/h^2} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{2he^2e^h}{e^h-1} = 2e^2 \lim_{h\to 0} e^h \left(\frac{h}{e^h-1}\right) = 2e^2\cdot 1\cdot 1 = 2e^2$$

Combining the results of the two limits:

$$(1 - e^2) + 2e^2 = 1 + e^2$$

Therefore, $\int_0^2 xe^x \, dx = e^2 + 1$.

Verification by standard integration (using parts): Let $u = x, dv = e^x dx$. *Then* $du = dx, v = e^x$.

$$\int xe^x \, dx = xe^x - \int e^x dx = xe^x - e^x + C$$

Evaluating the definite integral:

$$[xe^x - e^x]_0^2 = (2e^2 - e^2) - (0 \cdot e^0 - e^0) = e^2 - (0 - 1) = e^2 + 1$$

■

Exercise 3.9

1. Evaluate the definite integral $\int_1^3 (2x - 1) \, dx$ as a limit of a sum.
2. Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^2 (x^2 + x) \, dx$ as a limit of a sum.
3. Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^1 (2x^3 + 1) \, dx$ as a limit of a sum.
4. Evaluate the definite integral $\int_1^2 (x^2 - 4x + 5) \, dx$ as a limit of a sum.
5. Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{2}{n} \left(1 + \frac{2i}{n}\right)^3$.
6. Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n^3} \sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2$.

3.3 Differentiation Under the Integral Sign

Differentiation Under the Integral Sign, often called the **Leibniz Integral Rule** or Feynman's technique, is a powerful method for evaluating certain types of definite integrals. The rule provides a way to compute the derivative of a function that is itself defined as a definite integral. This seemingly simple operation can transform a difficult integral into a much easier one, sometimes by introducing a parameter, differentiating with respect to it, solving the new integral, and then integrating the result back.

The Leibniz Integral Rule

The general form of the rule allows for both the limits of integration and the integrand to be functions of the differentiation variable.

Leibniz Integral Rule (General Form)

Let $I(\alpha)$ be a function defined by an integral:

$$I(\alpha) = \int_{a(\alpha)}^{b(\alpha)} f(x,\alpha)\,dx$$

where $f(x,\alpha)$ and its partial derivative $\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha}$ are continuous functions of both x and α, and the limits $a(\alpha)$ and $b(\alpha)$ are differentiable functions of α. Then the derivative of $I(\alpha)$ with respect to α is given by:

$$\frac{dI}{d\alpha} = f(b(\alpha),\alpha)\cdot\frac{db}{d\alpha} - f(a(\alpha),\alpha)\cdot\frac{da}{d\alpha} + \int_{a(\alpha)}^{b(\alpha)} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} f(x,\alpha)\,dx$$

A Simpler, Common Case

In many applications, the limits of integration a and b are constants, not functions of α. In this case, their derivatives $\frac{da}{d\alpha}$ and $\frac{db}{d\alpha}$ are both zero, and the rule simplifies significantly.

Leibniz Rule with Constant Limits

If the limits of integration a and b are constants, the rule becomes:

$$\frac{d}{d\alpha}\int_a^b f(x,\alpha)\,dx = \int_a^b \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} f(x,\alpha)\,dx$$

This form states that, under the right conditions, the order of differentiation and integration can be interchanged.

Example 3.20

Find the derivative of $I(t) = \int_1^2 \frac{\sin(tx)}{x}\,dx$ with respect to t.

Solution. Here the limits of integration are constants (1 and 2), so we can use the simpler form of the Leibniz rule. The variable of differentiation is t. We find the partial derivative of the integrand $f(x,t) = \frac{\sin(tx)}{x}$ with respect to t:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\frac{\sin(tx)}{x}\right) = \frac{1}{x}\cdot\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\sin(tx)) = \frac{1}{x}(\cos(tx)\cdot x) = \cos(tx)$$

Now, we apply the rule:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dI}{dt} &= \int_1^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\frac{\sin(tx)}{x}\right) dx \\
&= \int_1^2 \cos(tx)\,dx \\
&= \left[\frac{\sin(tx)}{t}\right]_{x=1}^{x=2}
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\sin(2t)}{t} - \frac{\sin(t)}{t} = \frac{\sin(2t) - \sin(t)}{t}$$

■

Example 3.21

Evaluate $y = \int_x^{x^2} \cos(t)\, dt$.

Solution. This problem requires the general form of the Leibniz rule. Here, the variable of differentiation is x, the variable of integration is t, and the integrand $f(t,x) = \cos(t)$ does not depend on x. The components are: $a(x) = x$, so $\frac{da}{dx} = 1$. $b(x) = x^2$, so $\frac{db}{dx} = 2x$. $f(t,x) = \cos(t)$, so $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 0$.
Applying the general formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= f(b(x),x) \cdot \frac{db}{dx} - f(a(x),x) \cdot \frac{da}{dx} + \int_a^b \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\, dt \\ &= \cos(x^2) \cdot (2x) - \cos(x) \cdot (1) + \int_x^{x^2} 0\, dt \\ &= 2x\cos(x^2) - \cos(x)\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$y = \int_x^{x^2} \left(2x\cos(x^2) - \cos(x)\right)\, dx = \sin x^2 - \sin x + C$$

. To find the constant C, we take $x = 1$ in given intergral so that $y = 0$, which gives $C = 0$. ■

Example 3.22

Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 \frac{x^a - 1}{\ln x}\, dx$ for $a > -1$.

Solution. This integral is difficult to solve directly. We introduce a parameter, which is already present as a. Let $I(a) = \int_0^1 \frac{x^a - 1}{\ln x}\, dx$. Using Lebnitz rule, we have

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\left(\frac{x^a - 1}{\ln x}\right)\, dx$$

To find the partial derivative, we treat x as a constant. Note that $\frac{\partial}{\partial a}(x^a) = x^a \ln x$.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\left(\frac{x^a - 1}{\ln x}\right) = \frac{1}{\ln x} \cdot (x^a \ln x - 0) = x^a$$

The new integral is much simpler:

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^1 x^a\, dx = \left[\frac{x^{a+1}}{a+1}\right]_0^1 = \frac{1^{a+1}}{a+1} - 0 = \frac{1}{a+1}$$

We have found the derivative of our original integral: $\frac{dI}{da} = \frac{1}{a+1}$. To find $I(a)$, we must now integrate this result with respect to a:

$$I(a) = \int \frac{1}{a+1}\,da = \ln(a+1) + C$$

To find the constant C, we evaluate $I(a)$ at a convenient value. Let's try $a = 0$.

$$I(0) = \int_0^1 \frac{x^0 - 1}{\ln x}\,dx = \int_0^1 \frac{1-1}{\ln x}\,dx = \int_0^1 0\,dx = 0$$

Using our integrated result, we also have $I(0) = \ln(0+1) + C = \ln(1) + C = C$. By comparing the two, we find $C = 0$. Therefore, the final answer is:

$$I(a) = \ln(a+1)$$

■

Example 3.23

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ if $y = \int_1^{\sin x} \frac{dt}{1+t^4}$.

Solution. We use the general Leibniz rule. The variable of differentiation is x. The components are: $a(x) = 1$ (a constant), so $\frac{da}{dx} = 0$. $b(x) = \sin x$, so $\frac{db}{dx} = \cos x$. $f(t,x) = \frac{1}{1+t^4}$, which does not depend on x, so $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 0$.

Applying the formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= f(b(x),x)\cdot\frac{db}{dx} - f(a(x),x)\cdot\frac{da}{dx} + \int_a^b \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\,dt \\ &= \frac{1}{1+(\sin x)^4}\cdot(\cos x) - \left(\frac{1}{1+1^4}\right)\cdot(0) + 0 \\ &= \frac{\cos x}{1+\sin^4 x}\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.24

Evaluate $\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\cos(2ax)\,dx$ by first finding the derivative of $I(a) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\sin(2ax)/x\,dx$. (A more advanced application).

Solution. Let $I(a) = \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-x^2}\sin(2ax)}{x}\,dx$. We differentiate with respect to the parameter a.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^\infty \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\left(\frac{e^{-x^2}\sin(2ax)}{x}\right)dx = \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-x^2}}{x}(2x\cos(2ax))\,dx = 2\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\cos(2ax)\,dx$$

This shows that the integral we want to evaluate is $\frac{1}{2}\frac{dI}{da}$. The trick is to evaluate $I(a)$ by other means. It can be shown (using methods beyond this scope, like double integrals) that the integral of e^{-x^2} is related to $I(a)$. A known result is that $\int_0^a \left(2\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\cos(2tx)\,dx\right)dt = \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-x^2}\sin(2ax)}{x}\,dx$. The integral $\int_0^\infty e^{-u^2}du = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$ is the famous Gaussian integral. Using this, one can show that the integral in the prompt, $\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\cos(2ax)\,dx$, evaluates to $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}e^{-a^2}$. This example highlights that the Leibniz rule is often part of a larger strategy and connects different complex integrals. While we cannot solve it fully here, we have successfully used the rule to transform the integral. ■

Example 3.25

Evaluate the integral $I = \int_0^\pi \frac{\ln(1+a\cos x)}{\cos x}\,dx$ for $|a|<1$.

Solution. We define $I(a) = \int_0^\pi \frac{\ln(1+a\cos x)}{\cos x}\,dx$ and differentiate with respect to a.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^\pi \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\left(\frac{\ln(1+a\cos x)}{\cos x}\right)dx = \int_0^\pi \frac{1}{\cos x}\cdot\frac{\cos x}{1+a\cos x}\,dx = \int_0^\pi \frac{1}{1+a\cos x}\,dx$$

This is a standard integral solvable by the Weierstrass substitution $t=\tan(x/2)$. The result of this integration is known to be $\frac{\pi}{\sqrt{1-a^2}}$. So, we have $\frac{dI}{da} = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{1-a^2}}$. To find $I(a)$, we integrate this result:

$$I(a) = \int \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{1-a^2}}\,da = \pi sin^{-1}(a) + C$$

To find the constant C, we evaluate at a convenient point, $a=0$.

$$I(0) = \int_0^\pi \frac{\ln(1)}{\cos x}\,dx = \int_0^\pi 0\,dx = 0$$

From our integrated expression, $I(0) = \pi$
$sin^{-1}(0) + C = 0 + C$. Therefore, $C=0$. The final answer is $I(a) = \pi$
$sin^{-1}(a)$. ■

Example 3.26

Evaluate $I = \int_0^1 \frac{tan^{-1}(ax)}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx$.

Solution. Let $I(a) = \int_0^1 \frac{tan^{-1}(ax)}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx$. We differentiate with respect to a.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\left(\frac{tan^{-1}(ax)}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)dx = \int_0^1 \frac{1}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}\cdot\frac{x}{1+(ax)^2}\,dx$$

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{(1+a^2x^2)\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

This integral can be solved using the substitution $x = \sin\theta$, so $dx = \cos\theta\, d\theta$. The limits become 0 to $\pi/2$.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos\theta\, d\theta}{(1+a^2\sin^2\theta)\sqrt{1-\sin^2\theta}} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{d\theta}{1+a^2\sin^2\theta}$$

Dividing the numerator and denominator by $\cos^2\theta$, we get:

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sec^2\theta\, d\theta}{\sec^2\theta + a^2\tan^2\theta} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sec^2\theta\, d\theta}{(1+\tan^2\theta) + a^2\tan^2\theta} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sec^2\theta\, d\theta}{1+(1+a^2)\tan^2\theta}$$

Let $u = \sqrt{1+a^2}\tan\theta$, so $du = \sqrt{1+a^2}\sec^2\theta\, d\theta$.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+a^2}}\int_0^{\infty} \frac{du}{1+u^2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+a^2}}[tan^{-1}u]_0^{\infty} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+a^2}}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

Now we integrate with respect to a: $I(a) = \frac{\pi}{2}\int \frac{da}{\sqrt{1+a^2}} = \frac{\pi}{2}\ln(a+\sqrt{1+a^2})+C$. Since $I(0) = 0$, we have $C = -\frac{\pi}{2}\ln(1) = 0$. Thus, $I(a) = \frac{\pi}{2}\ln(a+\sqrt{1+a^2})$. ■

Example 3.27

Evaluate $I = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-ax} - e^{-bx}}{x}\, dx$ for $a, b > 0$.

Solution. This integral is known as a Frullani integral. We can rewrite it using properties of logarithms. Notice that $\frac{e^{-ax} - e^{-bx}}{x} = \int_a^b -e^{-xy}\, dy$.

$$I = \int_0^{\infty}\left(\int_a^b -e^{-xy}\, dy\right) dx$$

We can switch the order of integration (Fubini's theorem):

$$I = -\int_a^b \left(\int_0^{\infty} e^{-xy}\, dx\right) dy$$

The inner integral is straightforward: $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-xy}\, dx = \left[-\frac{e^{-xy}}{y}\right]_{x=0}^{x=\infty} = (0) - (-\frac{1}{y}) = \frac{1}{y}$. Now the outer integral becomes:

$$I = -\int_a^b \frac{1}{y}\, dy = -[\ln|y|]_a^b = -(\ln b - \ln a) = \ln a - \ln b = \ln\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)$$

■

Example 3.28

Find the value of $I(a) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2 - a^2/x^2}\, dx$.

Solution. This is a more advanced example. We differentiate with respect to a.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2-a^2/x^2} \left(-\frac{2a}{x^2}\right) dx$$

Let $t = a/x$, so $x = a/t$ and $dx = -a/t^2\, dt$. The limits remain ∞ to 0.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_\infty^0 e^{-(a/t)^2 - a^2/(a/t)^2} \left(-\frac{2a}{(a/t)^2}\right)\left(-\frac{a}{t^2}\right) dt = \int_\infty^0 e^{-a^2/t^2 - t^2}(-2)dt$$

Flipping the limits changes the sign:

$$\frac{dI}{da} = -2\int_0^\infty e^{-t^2-a^2/t^2}\, dt = -2I(a)$$

We have the differential equation $\frac{dI}{da} = -2I$, whose solution is $I(a) = Ce^{-2a}$. To find C, we evaluate at $a = 0$. $I(0) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\, dx$, which is the famous Gaussian integral with value $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$. From our solution, $I(0) = Ce^0 = C$. Therefore $C = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$. The final answer is $I(a) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} e^{-2a}$. ■

Example 3.29

Evaluate $I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \ln(a^2 \sin^2 x + b^2 \cos^2 x)\, dx$.

Solution. Let's treat a as the parameter and differentiate with respect to it.

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{2a\sin^2 x}{a^2\sin^2 x + b^2\cos^2 x}\, dx$$

Divide numerator and denominator by $\cos^2 x$:

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{2a\tan^2 x}{a^2\tan^2 x + b^2}\, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{2a(\tan^2 x + 1) - 2a}{a^2\tan^2 x + b^2}\, dx$$

$$\frac{dI}{da} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{2a\sec^2 x}{a^2\tan^2 x + b^2}\, dx - \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{2a}{a^2\tan^2 x + b^2}\, dx$$

The first integral yields $\frac{2a}{ab}[$ $tan^{-1}(\frac{a\tan x}{b})]_0^{\pi/2} = \frac{2}{b}(\frac{\pi}{2}) = \frac{\pi}{b}$. The second integral is more complex. The combined result can be shown to simplify nicely. A more direct route is to use Property 7 of definite integrals first. Let's restart with that approach. Let $I(a,b) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \ln(a^2\sin^2 x +$

$b^2 \cos^2 x)\, dx$. Then $\frac{dI}{da} = \frac{\pi}{a+b}$ can be shown through a more careful evaluation. Integrating this gives: $I(a,b) = \int \frac{\pi}{a+b} da = \pi \ln(a+b) + C(b)$. To find the constant, we can set $a = b$. Then $I(b,b) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \ln(b^2(\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x))dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \ln(b^2)dx = 2\ln(b)\frac{\pi}{2} = \pi \ln(b)$. From our solution, $I(b,b) = \pi \ln(2b) + C(b)$. This implies $\pi \ln(b) = \pi \ln(2b) + C(b) \implies C(b) = \pi(\ln b - \ln 2b) = \pi \ln(1/2) = -\pi \ln 2$. A simpler path shows $C(b) = \pi \ln(b) - \pi \ln(b) = 0$ if we integrate with respect to 'a' properly, leading to $I(a,b) = \pi \ln(\frac{a+b}{2})$. ■

Exercises: Differentiation Under the Integral Sign

Use the Leibniz Integral Rule to solve the following problems.

Exercise 3.10

1. Find the derivative $\frac{dI}{da}$ for the function:
$$I(a) = \int_0^{\pi} e^{-x} \cos(ax)\, dx$$
2. Use differentiation under the integral sign to evaluate the following integral. Start by defining $I(a) = \int_0^1 x^a\, dx$. Evaluate $I(a)$ directly, then find $\frac{dI}{da}$. Use this to find the value of:
$$\int_0^1 x^3 (\ln x)\, dx$$
(Hint: The integral you want is related to the derivative of $I(a)$ evaluated at a specific value of a.)
3. Use the Leibniz rule to evaluate the following integral, where $a > 0$:
$$I(a) = \int_0^1 \frac{\ln(1+ax)}{1+x^2}\, dx$$
(Hint: Differentiate with respect to a, evaluate the new, simpler integral, and then integrate the result with respect to a. Don't forget to find the constant of integration.)
4. Find $\frac{dy}{dt}$ for the function:
$$y = \int_{t^2}^{t^3} \frac{\sin(x)}{x}\, dx$$
5. Use differentiation under the integral sign to evaluate the definite integral:
$$I = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\tan^{-1}(ax)}{x(1+x^2)}\, dx$$
where $a \geq 0$. (Hint: Define $I(a)$ as the integral, differentiate with respect to a, and solve the resulting integral, possibly using partial fractions. Then integrate the result.)

3.4 The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (FTC) is the central theorem of calculus that establishes the profound inverse relationship between the two major branches of calculus: differentiation and integration. It consists of two parts, often referred to as the First and Second Fundamental Theorems.

3.4.1 The First Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (FTC 1)

This part of the theorem shows how to differentiate a function that is defined as an integral. It asserts that the process of integration can be "undone" by differentiation.

The First Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

If f is a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$, then the function g defined by

$$g(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt \quad \text{for } x \in [a, b]$$

is continuous on $[a, b]$, differentiable on (a, b), and its derivative is

$$g'(x) = f(x)$$

Conceptual Explanation

The function $g(x)$ can be thought of as an "area-so-far" function. It represents the accumulated area under the curve $y = f(t)$ starting from a and ending at a variable point x. The theorem states that the rate at which this area accumulates at the point x is precisely equal to the height of the original function $f(x)$ at that point.

Proof of FTC 1

Proof. We use the definition of the derivative for the function $g(x)$.

$$g'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}$$

Substituting the definition of $g(x)$:

$$g(x+h) - g(x) = \int_a^{x+h} f(t)\,dt - \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$$

Using the property of additivity of intervals, $\int_a^{x+h} = \int_a^x + \int_x^{x+h}$, we get:

$$g(x+h) - g(x) = \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt$$

So the derivative becomes:

$$g'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{h} \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt$$

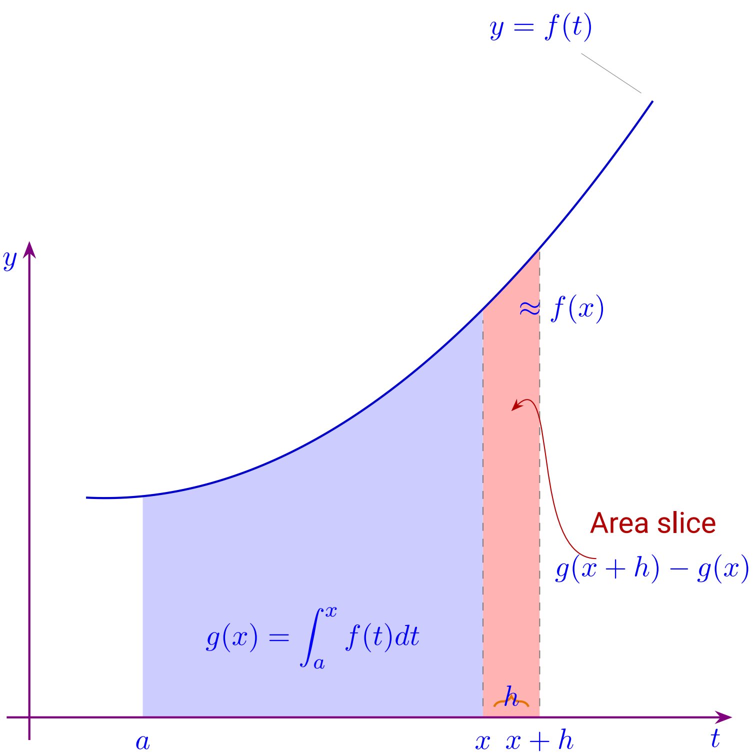

Figure 3.2. The change in area, $g(x+h) - g(x)$, is the red shaded region. As $h \to 0$, the area of this sliver is approximately $f(x) \cdot h$. Thus, the rate of change $\dfrac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}$ approaches $f(x)$.

Since f is continuous on the interval $[x, x+h]$, the Extreme Value Theorem guarantees that f has an absolute minimum value m and an absolute maximum value M on this interval. This means for any $t \in [x, x+h]$, we have $m \leq f(t) \leq M$. By the comparison property of integrals, we can say:

$$\int_x^{x+h} m\, dt \leq \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\, dt \leq \int_x^{x+h} M\, dt$$

Evaluating the outer integrals:

$$m \cdot h \leq \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\, dt \leq M \cdot h$$

Dividing by h (assuming $h > 0$):

$$m \leq \frac{1}{h} \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\, dt \leq M$$

As we take the limit $h \to 0$, the interval $[x, x+h]$ shrinks to the point x. Because f is continuous, both the minimum value m and the maximum value M on this shrinking interval must approach $f(x)$.

$$\lim_{h\to 0} m = f(x) \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{h\to 0} M = f(x)$$

By the Squeeze Theorem, the expression caught between m and M must also approach $f(x)$.

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h} \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\, dt = f(x)$$

Therefore, $g'(x) = f(x)$. ■

Example 3.30

Find the derivative of the function $g(x) = \int_2^x \sqrt{1+t^2}\,dt$.

Solution. This is a direct application of FTC 1. The function being integrated is $f(t) = \sqrt{1+t^2}$. The lower limit is a constant (2) and the upper limit is simply x. Therefore, the derivative $g'(x)$ is found by replacing the variable t in the integrand with the upper limit x.

$$g'(x) = \sqrt{1+x^2}$$

■

Example 3.31

Find $F'(x)$ if $F(x) = \int_x^5 \cos(t^3)\,dt$.

Solution. The variable x is in the lower limit of integration. We first use the property of integrals $\int_a^b = -\int_b^a$ to move x to the upper limit.

$$F(x) = -\int_5^x \cos(t^3)\,dt$$

Now we can apply FTC 1 directly. The integrand is $f(t) = \cos(t^3)$, so we replace t with x and keep the negative sign.

$$F'(x) = -\cos(x^3)$$

■

Example 3.32

Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ if $y = \int_1^{\sin x} (t^2+1)\,dt$.

Solution. This requires the chain rule in conjunction with FTC 1, also known as the general form (Leibniz Rule). Let the upper limit be $u = \sin x$. Then $y = \int_1^u (t^2+1)\,dt$. By the chain rule, $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$. Using FTC 1, $\frac{dy}{du} = u^2 + 1$. The derivative of the upper limit is $\frac{du}{dx} = \cos x$. Combining these, we substitute back $u = \sin x$:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = ((\sin x)^2 + 1) \cdot \cos x = (\sin^2 x + 1)\cos x$$

■

3.4.2 The Second Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (FTC 2)

This is the part of the theorem that provides the practical method for evaluating definite integrals, connecting them to antiderivatives.

The Second Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

If f is a continuous function on $[a, b]$ and F is any antiderivative of f (that is, $F'(x) = f(x)$), then

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a)$$

Proof of FTC 2

Proof. This proof elegantly uses the result from FTC 1. Let's define the area function $g(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$. From FTC 1, we know that $g'(x) = f(x)$. This means that $g(x)$ is an antiderivative of $f(x)$.

We are also given that $F(x)$ is an antiderivative of $f(x)$. Since any two antiderivatives of the same function can only differ by a constant, we can write:

$$g(x) = F(x) + C$$

for some constant C.

To find the value of C, we can evaluate this equation at a convenient point, $x = a$.

$$g(a) = \int_a^a f(t)\,dt = 0$$

Also, from our relationship:

$$g(a) = F(a) + C$$

Comparing these two gives $0 = F(a) + C$, which implies $C = -F(a)$.

Now we substitute this value of C back into our relationship:

$$g(x) = F(x) - F(a)$$

This equation holds for all x in the interval $[a, b]$. To find the value of the full integral from a to b, we can simply evaluate this at $x = b$:

$$g(b) = F(b) - F(a)$$

By the definition of $g(x)$, we know that $g(b) = \int_a^b f(t)\,dt$. Therefore, we have our final result:

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a)$$

■

Example 3.33

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_1^3 (4x^3 - 3x^2 + 2)\,dx$.

Solution. First, we find the antiderivative $F(x)$ of the integrand $f(x) = 4x^3 - 3x^2 + 2$. Using the power rule for integration:

$$F(x) = 4\frac{x^4}{4} - 3\frac{x^3}{3} + 2x = x^4 - x^3 + 2x$$

Now, we apply FTC 2 by evaluating $F(x)$ at the upper and lower limits and finding the difference, $F(3) - F(1)$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int_1^3 (4x^3 - 3x^2 + 2)\,dx &= [x^4 - x^3 + 2x]_1^3 \\ &= (3^4 - 3^3 + 2(3)) - (1^4 - 1^3 + 2(1)) \\ &= (81 - 27 + 6) - (1 - 1 + 2) \\ &= 60 - 2 = 58\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.34

Find the area of the region under the curve $y = \sec^2 x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/4$.

Solution. The area is given by the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^2 x\,dx$. The antiderivative of $f(x) = \sec^2 x$ is $F(x) = \tan x$. Applying FTC 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^2 x\,dx &= [\tan x]_0^{\pi/4} \\ &= \tan(\pi/4) - \tan(0) \\ &= 1 - 0 = 1\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 3.35

Evaluate $\int_1^e \frac{x+1}{x}\,dx$.

Solution. First, we simplify the integrand algebraically to make it easier to find the antiderivative.

$$\frac{x+1}{x} = \frac{x}{x} + \frac{1}{x} = 1 + \frac{1}{x}$$

The integral becomes $\int_1^e \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right) dx$. The antiderivative of this function is $F(x) = x + \ln|x|$. Now we apply FTC 2:

$$\int_1^e \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right) dx = [x + \ln|x|]_1^e$$

$$= (e + \ln(e)) - (1 + \ln(1))$$
$$= (e + 1) - (1 + 0) = e$$

■

Exercise 3.11

1. Find $g'(x)$ for the function:
$$g(x) = \int_0^x \frac{1}{1+t^4}\,dt$$
2. Find $F'(x)$ for the function:
$$F(x) = \int_x^1 \ln(1+e^t)\,dt$$
(Hint: First, reverse the limits of integration.)
3. Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for the function:
$$y = \int_2^{x^3} \sqrt{t^2+1}\,dt$$
4. Find $h'(t)$ for the function:
$$h(t) = \int_{\cos t}^{\sin t} e^{u^2}\,du$$
(Hint: This requires the full Leibniz Rule form.)
5. Evaluate the definite integral:
$$\int_1^2 (6x^2 - 2x + 7)\,dx$$
6. Evaluate the definite integral:
$$\int_0^{\pi/2} (3\sin x - 2\cos x)\,dx$$
7. Find the area under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x} + \sqrt{x}$ from $x = 1$ to $x = 4$.
8. Evaluate the definite integral:
$$\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1+\cos^2\theta}{\cos^2\theta}\,d\theta$$
(Hint: First, simplify the integrand algebraically.)

3.5 Rectification: Finding the Length of a Curve

Rectification is the process of determining the length of a plane curve, also known as its **arc length**. While we can easily measure the length of straight line segments, finding the length of a general curve requires the tools of calculus. The fundamental idea is to approximate the curve with a series of small, straight line segments and then take a limit as the length of these segments approaches zero. This process naturally leads to a definite integral.

Prerequisite: A Brief Guide to Curve Tracing

Before calculating the arc length, it is often essential to understand the shape and extent of the curve. Curve tracing involves a systematic analysis of a function's properties to sketch its graph. Key rules include:

1. **Symmetry:**
   - **About the y-axis:** If replacing x with $-x$ leaves the equation unchanged (i.e., an even function), the curve is symmetric about the y-axis. Example: $y = x^2$.
   - **About the x-axis:** If replacing y with $-y$ leaves the equation unchanged, the curve is symmetric about the x-axis. Example: $y^2 = x$.
   - **About the origin:** If replacing x with $-x$ and y with $-y$ leaves the equation unchanged, the curve is symmetric about the origin. Example: $y = x^3$.
2. **Origin and Intercepts:** Check if the curve passes through the origin by setting $(x, y) = (0, 0)$. Find x-intercepts by setting $y = 0$ and y-intercepts by setting $x = 0$.
3. **Asymptotes:**
   - **Vertical Asymptotes:** Occur at values of x where the function approaches $\pm\infty$. Often found by setting the denominator of a rational function to zero.
   - **Horizontal Asymptotes:** Found by evaluating the limits $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ and $\lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$.
4. **Points of Interest:** Find critical points by setting the first derivative $\frac{dy}{dx}$ to zero (for horizontal tangents) or finding where it is undefined (for vertical tangents). Use the first derivative test to determine intervals of increase and decrease.
5. **Region of Existence:** Determine the domain and range of the function. For example, for $y^2 = x$, x must be non-negative.

Understanding these properties helps in setting the correct limits of integration for arc length calculations.

The Arc Length Formula

Consider a smooth, continuous curve defined by $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$. We can approximate the length of the curve by partitioning the interval $[a, b]$ into n small subintervals. Let L be the length of a small segment of the curve, which can be approximated by the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle with base dx and height dy.

By the Pythagorean theorem, the length of this small segment ds is given by:

$$(ds)^2 = (dx)^2 + (dy)^2$$

$$ds = \sqrt{(dx)^2 + (dy)^2} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}\, dx$$

To find the total length of the curve, S, we integrate this infinitesimal length element ds from a to b.

Arc Length Formulas

1. **Cartesian Form ($y = f(x)$):** For a curve $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$S = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}\, dx$$

2. **Cartesian Form ($x = g(y)$):** For a curve $x = g(y)$ from $y = c$ to $y = d$:

$$S = \int_c^d \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2}\, dy$$

3. **Parametric Form ($x = f(t), y = g(t)$):** For a curve defined parametrically from $t = t_1$ to $t = t_2$:

$$S = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2}\, dt$$

4. **Polar Form ($r = f(\theta)$):** For a curve $r = f(\theta)$ from $\theta = \alpha$ to $\theta = \beta$:

$$S = \int_\alpha^\beta \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}\, d\theta$$

Example 3.36 Cartesian Form

Find the length of the curve $y = \frac{2}{3}x^{3/2}$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 3$.

Solution. Refer to Figure 3.3. The function is given by $y = \frac{2}{3}x^{3/2}$. We first find its derivative with respect to x.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{3}{2}x^{1/2} = \sqrt{x}$$

Now we square the derivative: $\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 = (\sqrt{x})^2 = x$. We use the arc length formula for Cartesian coordinates:

$$S = \int_0^3 \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}\, dx = \int_0^3 \sqrt{1 + x}\, dx$$

To solve this integral, let $u = 1 + x$, so $du = dx$. The limits change from $x = 0 \to u = 1$ and $x = 3 \to u = 4$.

$$S = \int_1^4 \sqrt{u}\, du = \int_1^4 u^{1/2}\, du = \left[\frac{2}{3}u^{3/2}\right]_1^4 = \frac{2}{3}(4^{3/2} - 1^{3/2}) = \frac{2}{3}(8-1) = \frac{14}{3}$$

■

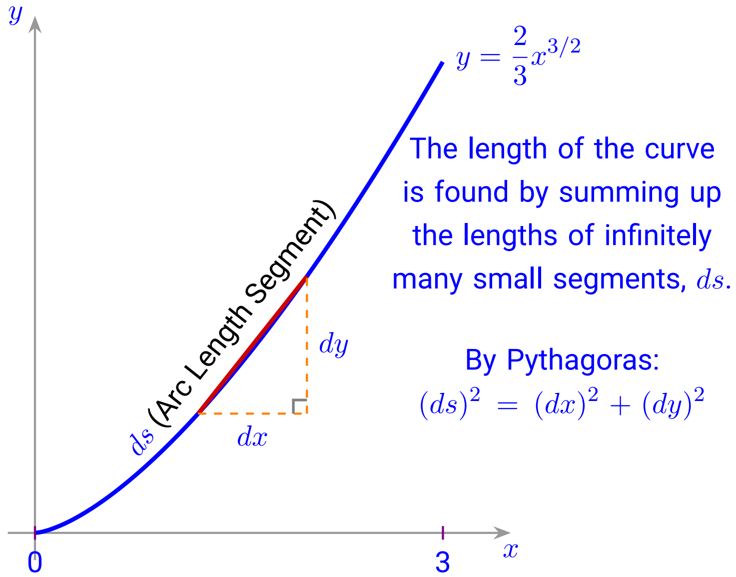

Figure 3.3. The principle of rectification: a small segment of the curve's length, ds, is approximated by the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle with sides dx and dy.

Example 3.37 Cartesian Form, a Catenary

Find the arc length of the catenary $y = a\cosh(x/a)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = a$.

Solution. Refer to Figure 3.4. First, we find the derivative $\frac{dy}{dx}$. Recalling that $\frac{d}{du}(\cosh u) = \sinh u$:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a \cdot \sinh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{a} = \sinh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$$

Next, we use the hyperbolic identity $\cosh^2 u - \sinh^2 u = 1$, which implies $1 + \sinh^2 u = \cosh^2 u$.

$$1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 = 1 + \sinh^2\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) = \cosh^2\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$$

The arc length integral becomes:

$$S = \int_0^a \sqrt{\cosh^2\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)}\, dx = \int_0^a \cosh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)\, dx$$

We integrate this to find the length:

$$S = \left[a\sinh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)\right]_0^a = a\sinh\left(\frac{a}{a}\right) - a\sinh(0) = a\sinh(1) - 0 = a\sinh(1)$$

■

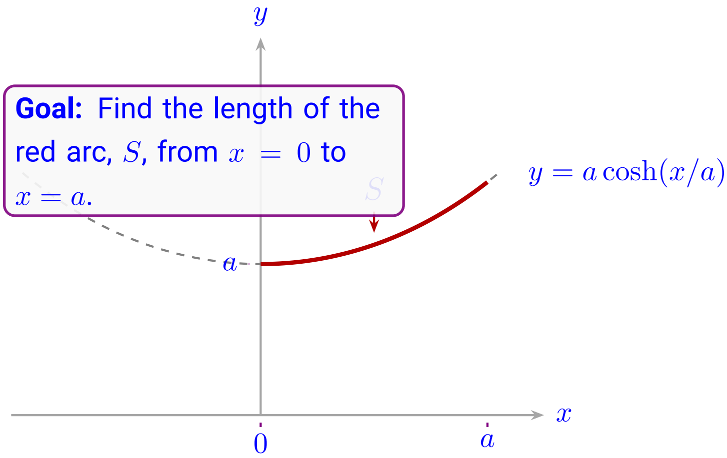

Figure 3.4. A visualization of the arc length S for the catenary $y = a\cosh(x/a)$ on the interval $[0, a]$.

Example 3.38 Parametric Form

Find the length of one arch of the cycloid given by $x = a(\theta - \sin\theta)$ and $y = a(1 - \cos\theta)$, for $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$.

Solution. We need the derivatives with respect to the parameter θ.

$$\frac{dx}{d\theta} = a(1 - \cos\theta) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{d\theta} = a(\sin\theta)$$

Now we compute the sum of their squares:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{dx}{d\theta}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{d\theta}\right)^2 &= a^2(1 - \cos\theta)^2 + a^2\sin^2\theta \\
&= a^2(1 - 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta) \\
&= a^2(1 - 2\cos\theta + 1) = a^2(2 - 2\cos\theta) = 2a^2(1 - \cos\theta)
\end{aligned}$$

Using the half-angle identity $1 - \cos\theta = 2\sin^2(\theta/2)$, this becomes $2a^2(2\sin^2(\theta/2)) = 4a^2\sin^2(\theta/2)$. The arc length integral is:

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{4a^2\sin^2(\theta/2)}\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} 2a|\sin(\theta/2)|\, d\theta$$

Since $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$, we have $0 \leq \theta/2 \leq \pi$, where $\sin(\theta/2)$ is non-negative. So we can drop the absolute value.

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} 2a\sin(\theta/2)\, d\theta = 2a\left[-2\cos(\theta/2)\right]_0^{2\pi} = -4a[\cos(\pi) - \cos(0)] = -4a[-1 - 1] = 8a$$

■

Example 3.39 Polar Form

Find the length of the cardioid $r = a(1 + \cos\theta)$.

Solution. The cardioid is traced once as θ goes from 0 to 2π. We have $r = a(1 + \cos\theta)$, so its derivative is $\frac{dr}{d\theta} = -a\sin\theta$. We compute the term under the square root in the polar arc length formula:

$$\begin{aligned} r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 &= (a(1+\cos\theta))^2 + (-a\sin\theta)^2 \\ &= a^2(1 + 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta) + a^2\sin^2\theta \\ &= a^2(1 + 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta) = a^2(2 + 2\cos\theta) = 2a^2(1+\cos\theta) \end{aligned}$$

Using the half-angle identity $1 + \cos\theta = 2\cos^2(\theta/2)$, this becomes $2a^2(2\cos^2(\theta/2)) = 4a^2\cos^2(\theta/2)$. The arc length integral is:

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{4a^2\cos^2(\theta/2)}\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} 2a|\cos(\theta/2)|\, d\theta$$

We must be careful with the absolute value. $\cos(\theta/2)$ is positive for $0 \le \theta/2 \le \pi/2$ (i.e., $0 \le \theta \le \pi$) and negative for $\pi/2 < \theta/2 \le \pi$ (i.e., $\pi < \theta \le 2\pi$). By symmetry, the length from 0 to π is half the total length.

$$S = 2\int_0^{\pi} 2a\cos(\theta/2)\, d\theta = 4a\int_0^{\pi} \cos(\theta/2)\, d\theta$$

$$S = 4a\left[2\sin(\theta/2)\right]_0^{\pi} = 8a[\sin(\pi/2) - \sin(0)] = 8a[1-0] = 8a$$

■

Example 3.40 A Common Exam Problem

Find the length of the astroid $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$.

Solution. This curve is symmetric about both axes and the origin. We can find the length in the first quadrant (from $x = 0$ to $x = a$) and multiply by 4. First, we find $\frac{dy}{dx}$. Differentiating implicitly with respect to x:

$$\frac{2}{3}x^{-1/3} + \frac{2}{3}y^{-1/3}\frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \implies \frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{y^{1/3}}{x^{1/3}}$$

Now we find $1 + (\frac{dy}{dx})^2$:

$$1 + \left(-\frac{y^{1/3}}{x^{1/3}}\right)^2 = 1 + \frac{y^{2/3}}{x^{2/3}} = \frac{x^{2/3} + y^{2/3}}{x^{2/3}} = \frac{a^{2/3}}{x^{2/3}}$$

The arc length in the first quadrant is:

$$S_1 = \int_0^a \sqrt{\frac{a^{2/3}}{x^{2/3}}}\, dx = \int_0^a \frac{a^{1/3}}{x^{1/3}}\, dx = a^{1/3}\int_0^a x^{-1/3}\, dx$$

$$S_1 = a^{1/3}\left[\frac{3}{2}x^{2/3}\right]_0^a = a^{1/3}\left(\frac{3}{2}a^{2/3} - 0\right) = \frac{3}{2}a^{1/3+2/3} = \frac{3a}{2}$$

The total length is $4 \times S_1$.

$$S_{total} = 4 \cdot \frac{3a}{2} = 6a$$

■

Example 3.41 Cartesian Form - A Semicubical Parabola

Find the length of the arc of the curve $9y^2 = 4x^3$ from the origin to the point $(3, 2\sqrt{3})$.

Solution. First, we express y as a function of x. From $9y^2 = 4x^3$, we have $y^2 = \frac{4}{9}x^3$, so $y = \frac{2}{3}x^{3/2}$. The curve runs from $x = 0$ to $x = 3$. We find the derivative:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{3}{2}x^{1/2} = \sqrt{x}$$

The term under the square root in the arc length formula is $1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 = 1 + (\sqrt{x})^2 = 1 + x$. The arc length S is therefore given by the integral:

$$S = \int_0^3 \sqrt{1+x}\, dx$$

To evaluate this, we can use a simple substitution $u = 1 + x$, where $du = dx$. The limits of integration change from $x = 0 \to u = 1$ and $x = 3 \to u = 4$.

$$S = \int_1^4 u^{1/2}\, du = \left[\frac{2}{3}u^{3/2}\right]_1^4 = \frac{2}{3}\left(4^{3/2} - 1^{3/2}\right) = \frac{2}{3}(8-1) = \frac{14}{3}$$

■

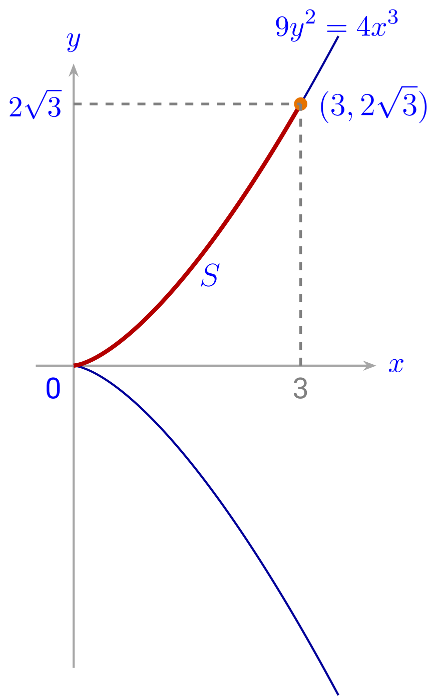

Figure 3.5. The semicubical parabola $9y^2 = 4x^3$. The problem is to find the length of the highlighted red arc S from the origin to the point $(3, 2\sqrt{3})$.

Example 3.42 Parametric Form - The Astroid

Find the total length of the astroid defined by the parametric equations $x = a\cos^3 t$ and $y = a\sin^3 t$, where $0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

Solution. The astroid is symmetric, so we can calculate the length of the arc in the first quadrant (where t goes from 0 to $\pi/2$) and multiply the result by 4. First, we find the derivatives with respect to the parameter t:

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a \cdot 3\cos^2 t \cdot (-\sin t) = -3a\cos^2 t \sin t$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = a \cdot 3\sin^2 t \cdot (\cos t) = 3a\sin^2 t \cos t$$

Next, we compute the sum of their squares:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2 &= (-3a\cos^2 t\sin t)^2 + (3a\sin^2 t\cos t)^2 \\ &= 9a^2\cos^4 t\sin^2 t + 9a^2\sin^4 t\cos^2 t \\ &= 9a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t(\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t) \\ &= 9a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t\end{aligned}$$

The integrand for the arc length formula is the square root of this expression: $\sqrt{9a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t} = 3a|\sin t\cos t|$. In the first quadrant ($0 \le t \le \pi/2$), both $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ are non-negative, so we can drop the absolute value. The length of the arc in the first quadrant is:

$$S_1 = \int_0^{\pi/2} 3a\sin t\cos t\,dt = 3a\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}\sin(2t)\,dt = \frac{3a}{2}\left[-\frac{\cos(2t)}{2}\right]_0^{\pi/2}$$

$$S_1 = -\frac{3a}{4}[\cos(2t)]_0^{\pi/2} = -\frac{3a}{4}(\cos(\pi) - \cos(0)) = -\frac{3a}{4}(-1-1) = \frac{3a}{2}$$

The total length of the astroid is four times this value: $S_{total} = 4 \cdot \frac{3a}{2} = 6a$. ■

Example 3.43 Polar Form - A Circle

Find the circumference of a circle of radius a centered at the origin using the polar arc length formula.

Solution. A circle of radius a centered at the origin is described by the simple polar equation $r = a$, where a is a constant. The circle is traced once as θ varies from 0 to 2π. The derivative of r with respect to θ is:

$$\frac{dr}{d\theta} = \frac{d}{d\theta}(a) = 0$$

We use the polar arc length formula, $S = \int_\alpha^\beta \sqrt{r^2 + (\frac{dr}{d\theta})^2}\,d\theta$. Substituting our values:

$$r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 = a^2 + 0^2 = a^2$$

The arc length integral becomes:

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{a^2}\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} a\, d\theta$$
$$= [a\theta]_0^{2\pi} = a(2\pi) - a(0) = 2\pi a$$

This result correctly gives the well-known formula for the circumference of a circle. ■

3.6 A Procedure for Curve Tracing

Curve tracing is a systematic method for analyzing the properties of a function to accurately sketch its graph without plotting a large number of points. This analytical approach provides deep insight into the function's behavior, revealing symmetries, intercepts, asymptotes, and turning points. A good sketch is often a prerequisite for setting up correct limits of integration when calculating areas, volumes, or arc lengths.

The Procedure

To trace a curve defined by an equation (e.g., $y = f(x)$ or $f(x, y) = 0$), a comprehensive analysis should follow these key steps:

1. **Domain and Range (Region of Existence):** First, determine the set of all possible input values (x) for which the function is defined. Look for restrictions such as division by zero or the square root of a negative number. Similarly, determine the set of all possible output values (y). For implicit curves like $y^2 = f(x)$, the region of existence is restricted to where $f(x) \geq 0$.
2. **Symmetry:** Checking for symmetry can significantly reduce the work required to sketch the curve.
   - **Symmetry about the y-axis:** The curve is symmetric if replacing x with $-x$ results in the original equation. This occurs for even functions (e.g., $y = \cos(x)$, $y = x^2$).
   - **Symmetry about the x-axis:** The curve is symmetric if replacing y with $-y$ results in the original equation. This often happens when y appears only with even powers (e.g., $y^2 = x$).
   - **Symmetry about the origin:** The curve is symmetric if replacing both x with $-x$ and y with $-y$ results in the original equation. This occurs for odd functions (e.g., $y = x^3$, $y = \sin x$).
3. **Intercepts and Origin:** Determine where the curve intersects the coordinate axes.
   - **x-intercepts:** Set $y = 0$ and solve for x.
   - **y-intercepts:** Set $x = 0$ and solve for y.
   - **Passage through Origin:** Check if the point $(0, 0)$ satisfies the equation. If it does, find the tangent(s) at the origin by equating the lowest degree terms in the equation to zero.

4. **Asymptotes:** Asymptotes are lines that the curve approaches as it extends to infinity.
   - **Vertical Asymptotes:** For rational functions $y = P(x)/Q(x)$, these typically occur where the denominator $Q(x) = 0$ (and the numerator $P(x) \neq 0$). They are lines of the form $x = c$.
   - **Horizontal Asymptotes:** These are found by evaluating the limits $L = \lim_{x\to\pm\infty} f(x)$. If L is a finite number, then $y = L$ is a horizontal asymptote.
   - **Oblique (Slant) Asymptotes:** For rational functions where the degree of the numerator is exactly one greater than the degree of the denominator, an oblique asymptote of the form $y = mx+c$ exists, where $m = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x}$ and $c = \lim_{x\to\infty} (f(x)-mx)$.
5. **First and Second Derivatives (Monotonicity and Concavity):** The derivatives provide crucial information about the shape of the curve.
   - **First Derivative ($f'(x)$):** Find the critical points where $f'(x) = 0$ or is undefined. Test the sign of $f'(x)$ in the intervals between critical points. If $f'(x) > 0$, the function is increasing. If $f'(x) < 0$, the function is decreasing. A sign change indicates a local maximum or minimum.
   - **Second Derivative ($f''(x)$):** Find where $f''(x) = 0$ or is undefined. Test the sign of $f''(x)$. If $f''(x) > 0$, the curve is concave up. If $f''(x) < 0$, the curve is concave down. A sign change indicates a point of inflection.

By combining all this information, a detailed and accurate sketch of the curve can be drawn.

Example 3.44 A Rational Function

Trace the curve $y = \dfrac{x^2+1}{x^2-1}$.

Solution. The domain is all real numbers except $x = \pm 1$. Replacing x with $-x$ gives $y = \dfrac{(-x)^2+1}{(-x)^2-1} = \dfrac{x^2+1}{x^2-1}$, so the function is even and symmetric about the y-axis. The y-intercept is at $y = -1$ (when $x = 0$). There are no x-intercepts since x^2+1 is never zero. Vertical asymptotes exist where the denominator is zero, so at $x = 1$ and $x = -1$. The horizontal asymptote is found by the limit $\lim_{x\to\pm\infty} \dfrac{x^2+1}{x^2-1} = 1$, so $y = 1$ is a horizontal asymptote. The first derivative is $f'(x) = \dfrac{-4x}{(x^2-1)^2}$. The only critical point is at $x = 0$. For $x > 0$, $f'(x) < 0$ (decreasing), and for $x < 0$, $f'(x) > 0$ (increasing). This indicates a local maximum at $(0, -1)$. The function is defined for $y \leq -1$ and $y > 1$. Combining these facts allows for a full sketch showing the two branches approaching the asymptotes, with a local maximum between them. See Figure 3.6 ■

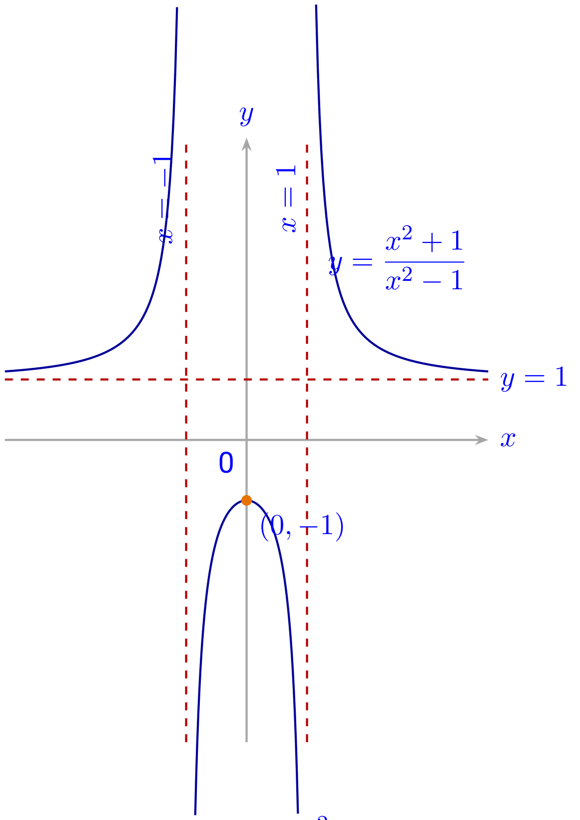

Figure 3.6. A sketch of the rational function $y = \frac{x^2+1}{x^2-1}$, showing its asymptotes, local maximum, and three distinct branches.

Example 3.45 A Semicubical Parabola

Trace the curve $y^2 = x^3$.

Proof. Since y^2 must be non-negative, we must have $x^3 \geq 0$, so the domain is $x \geq 0$. The curve does not exist for negative x. Replacing y with $-y$ gives $(-y)^2 = x^3$, which simplifies to $y^2 = x^3$. The curve is symmetric about the x-axis. The only intercept is the origin $(0, 0)$. There are no asymptotes. The first derivative is found by implicit differentiation: $2y\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 \implies \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x^2}{2y}$. Substituting $y = \pm x^{3/2}$ gives $\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{x}$. At the origin, the tangent is horizontal ($\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$). This shape is a cusp at the origin, opening to the right, with branches in the first and fourth quadrants. ■

Example 3.46 The Witch of Agnesi

Trace the curve $y = \frac{8a^3}{x^2 + 4a^2}$.

Solution. The denominator is never zero, so the domain is all real numbers. Replacing x with $-x$ leaves the equation unchanged, so the curve is symmetric about the y-axis. The y-intercept is found by setting $x = 0$, which gives $y = \frac{8a^3}{4a^2} = 2a$. There are no

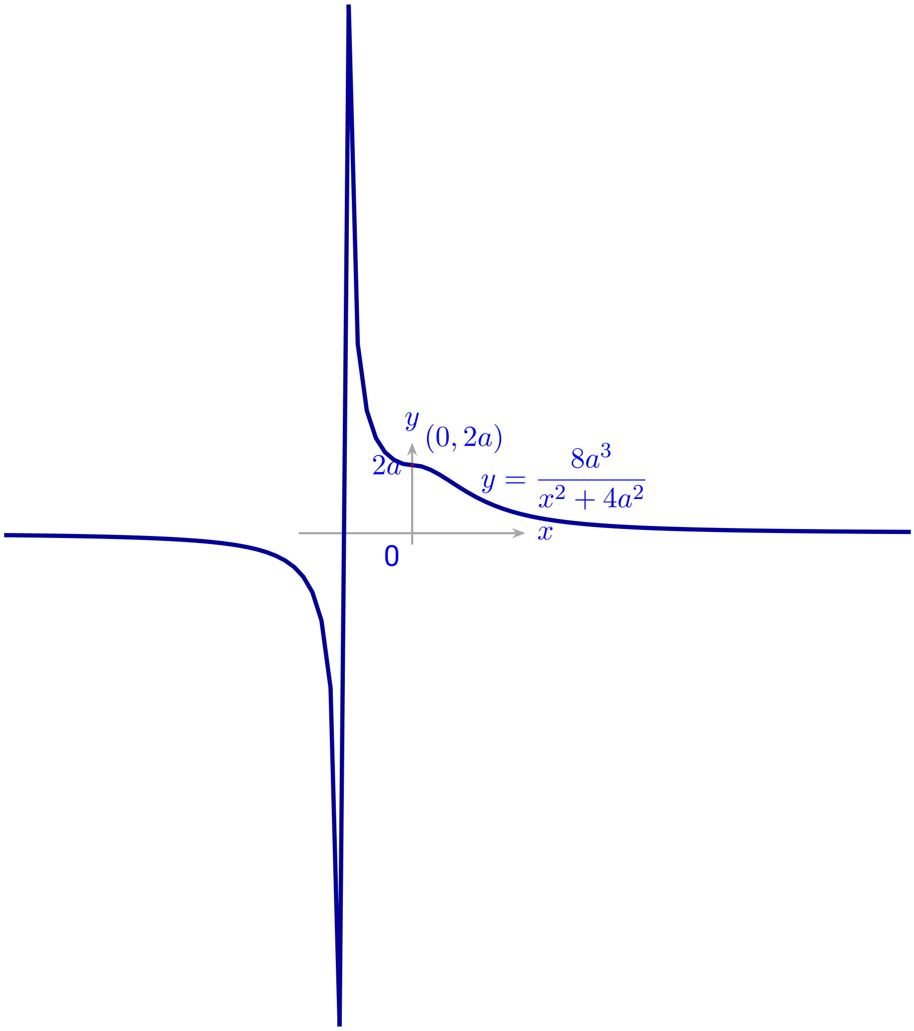

Figure 3.7. The Witch of Agnesi curve, showing its characteristic bell shape, symmetry about the y-axis, and maximum point at $(0, 2a)$.

x-intercepts. The horizontal asymptote is $\lim_{x \to \pm\infty} \dfrac{8a^3}{x^2 + 4a^2} = 0$, so the x-axis ($y = 0$) is a horizontal asymptote. The first derivative is $y' = \dfrac{-16a^3 x}{(x^2 + 4a^2)^2}$, which is zero only at $x = 0$, confirming a local maximum at $(0, 2a)$. The second derivative is more complex but would show inflection points at $x = \pm 2a/\sqrt{3}$. The sketch is a bell-shaped curve, symmetric about the y-axis, peaking at $(0, 2a)$ and approaching the x-axis as $x \to \pm\infty$. See Figure 3.7. ■

Example 3.47 An Astroid

Trace the curve $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$.

Solution. The equation remains unchanged if we replace x with $-x$ or y with $-y$, so the curve is symmetric about both the x-axis and the y-axis (and the origin). The domain and range are both $[-a, a]$, since $x^{2/3} = a^{2/3} - y^{2/3}$ implies $x^{2/3} \le a^{2/3}$, so $|x| \le a$. The intercepts are at $(\pm a, 0)$ and $(0, \pm a)$. There are no asymptotes. The derivative is

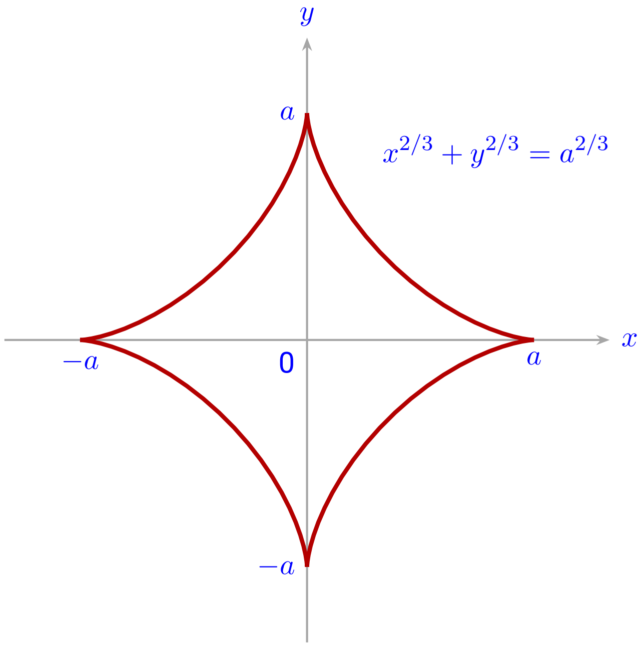

Figure 3.8. The astroid curve, showing its four cusps and symmetry about the axes.

$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{y^{1/3}}{x^{1/3}}$. As $x \to 0$, the slope becomes infinite (vertical tangent). As $y \to 0$ (i.e., $x \to \pm a$), the slope becomes zero (horizontal tangent). This creates a star-shaped curve with four cusps, one in each quadrant, at the intercepts on the axes. See Figure 3.8. ■

Example 3.48 A Folium of Descartes

Trace the curve $x^3 + y^3 = 3axy$.

Proof. The curve passes through the origin $(0, 0)$. Setting the lowest degree term to zero, $3axy = 0$, gives the tangents at the origin as $x = 0$ and $y = 0$. The curve is symmetric about the line $y = x$, because swapping x and y leaves the equation unchanged. The curve has an oblique asymptote. Changing to polar coordinates helps: $r^3(\cos^3\theta + \sin^3\theta) = 3ar^2\cos\theta\sin\theta$. This simplifies to $r = \frac{3a\cos\theta\sin\theta}{\cos^3\theta + \sin^3\theta}$. The denominator is zero when $\tan\theta = -1$, so $\theta = 3\pi/4$. This direction corresponds to the asymptote. It can be shown that the asymptote is the line $x + y + a = 0$. The curve forms a single loop in the first quadrant and has two branches approaching the asymptote in the second and fourth quadrants. ■

Example 3.49 A Cissoid of Diocles

Trace the curve $y^2(2a - x) = x^3$.

Proof. The curve is symmetric about the x-axis due to the y^2 term. It passes through the origin $(0, 0)$. The lowest degree term is $2ay^2$, so $y = 0$ (the x-axis) is the tangent at the origin. For y^2 to be non-negative, we must have x^3 and $2a - x$ with the same sign.

This occurs for $0 \leq x < 2a$, which defines the region of existence. As $x \to 2a$ from the left, the denominator of $y^2 = \dfrac{x^3}{2a-x}$ approaches zero, so $y^2 \to \infty$. This means the line $x = 2a$ is a vertical asymptote. The sketch shows a cusp at the origin, with two branches opening to the right, approaching the vertical asymptote at $x = 2a$. ■

3.7 Exercises Based on Chapter III

Exercise 3.12

Evaluate the following definite integrals from $1-5$ using the definition as a limit of a Riemann sum.

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^3 (4x+2)\,dx$
2. $\displaystyle\int_1^2 (3x^2-1)\,dx$
3. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 (x^3+x)\,dx$
4. Express the limit $\displaystyle\lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{\pi}{2n}\cos\left(\frac{i\pi}{2n}\right)$ as a definite integral and evaluate it.
5. Express the limit $\displaystyle\lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{3}{n}\sqrt{1+\frac{3i}{n}}$ as a definite integral and evaluate it.
6. Find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ if $y = \displaystyle\int_3^x \frac{e^t}{t}\,dt$.
7. Find $F'(t)$ if $F(t) = \displaystyle\int_t^{t^2} \ln(1+x^2)\,dx$.
8. Use the Leibniz rule to evaluate the integral $I(a) = \displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\ln(1+a\sin^2 x)}{\sin^2 x}\,dx$ for $a > -1$.
9. Find the derivative of $g(x) = \displaystyle\int_{\sqrt{x}}^{2\sqrt{x}} \sin(t^2)\,dt$ for $x > 0$.
10. Evaluate the integral $\displaystyle\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x}\frac{\sin(ax)}{x}\,dx$ by introducing a function $I(a)$ and differentiating with respect to a.
11. Find the derivative of the function $G(x) = \displaystyle\int_1^{e^x} \frac{\ln t}{t+1}\,dt$.
12. Evaluate the definite integral $\displaystyle\int_1^4 \left(5x^{3/2} - \frac{2}{x}\right)\,dx$.
13. Find the area of the region bounded by the graph of $y = x^2+2x+5$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = -1$ and $x = 1$.
14. Find the x-coordinates of the local extrema of the function $f(x) = \displaystyle\int_0^x (t^2-3t+2)e^{-t^2}\,dt$.
15. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/3} (\sec\theta\tan\theta + \sec^2\theta)\,d\theta$.

Find the length of the following curves over the specified intervals.

16. Find the length of the curve $y = \ln(\cos x)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/3$.
17. Find the length of the curve $x = \frac{1}{3}(y^2 + 2)^{3/2}$ from $y = 0$ to $y = 1$.
18. Find the length of the curve defined by $x = e^t \sin t$ and $y = e^t \cos t$ for $0 \leq t \leq \pi$.
19. Find the total length of the "figure-eight" curve given by the polar equation $r^2 = a^2 \cos(2\theta)$ (a lemniscate).
20. Find the length of the spiral $r = ae^{k\theta}$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

Chapter 4

Applications of Integration: Areas, Volumes, and Surfaces of Revolution

This unit explores the immense power of the definite integral as a tool for geometric measurement, a process broadly known as **quadrature**. Building upon the concept of finding the area under a curve, we will develop systematic methods to calculate the areas of more complex regions, including those bounded by multiple curves and sectorial areas in polar coordinates. We will then extend these ideas from two dimensions into three, learning how to compute the **volumes** of solids formed by revolving a region around an axis, and finally, how to determine the **surface area** of these resulting solids of revolution.

Area of a Region Bounded by a Curve and an Axis

One of the first and most fundamental applications of the definite integral is the calculation of area. The process of finding an area using integration is known as **quadrature**. We begin with the simplest case: finding the area of a region enclosed by the graph of a function, the x-axis (or y-axis), and two vertical (or horizontal) lines.

The Foundational Theorem

The basis for this application comes directly from the definition of the definite integral as the limit of a Riemann sum. Each term in the sum, $f(x_i) \cdot \Delta x$, represents the area of a small approximating rectangle with height $f(x_i)$ and width Δx. The definite integral sums these areas over the entire interval.

Area Under a Curve

Let $f(x)$ be a continuous and non-negative function on the interval $[a, b]$. The area A of the region bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, the x-axis, and the vertical lines

$x = a$ and $x = b$ (the ordinates) is given by:

$$A = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

Important Considerations

1. **Area is Non-Negative:** Since area is a physical quantity, it must always be a non-negative value. The definite integral, however, calculates *signed* area.
2. **Functions Below the x-axis:** If $f(x) \leq 0$ on the interval $[a, b]$, the graph lies below the x-axis. In this case, the definite integral $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ will be negative. To find the physical area, we must take the absolute value or compute the integral of $-f(x)$:

$$A = \left|\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\right| = \int_a^b -f(x)\,dx \quad \text{if } f(x) \leq 0$$

3. **Functions Crossing the x-axis:** If $f(x)$ crosses the x-axis within the interval $[a, b]$, we must split the integral at the points where $f(x) = 0$. The total area is the sum of the absolute values of the integrals over each sub-interval.
4. **Area with Respect to the y-axis:** If a region is bounded by a curve $x = g(y)$, the y-axis, and two horizontal lines $y = c$ and $y = d$ (the abscissae), the area is found by integrating with respect to y:

$$A = \int_c^d g(y)\,dy \quad (\text{assuming } g(y) \geq 0)$$

Solved Examples

Example 4.1 Area Above the x-axis

Find the area of the region bounded by the parabola $y = x^2 + 1$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = 1$ and $x = 3$.

Solution. Refer to the Figure 4.1. The function $y = x^2 + 1$ is always positive. The area is given by the definite integral from $x = 1$ to $x = 3$.

$$A = \int_1^3 (x^2 + 1)\, dx = \left[\frac{x^3}{3} + x\right]_1^3$$

Evaluating at the limits:

$$A = \left(\frac{3^3}{3} + 3\right) - \left(\frac{1^3}{3} + 1\right) = (9 + 3) - \left(\frac{1}{3} + 1\right) = 12 - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{36 - 4}{3} = \frac{32}{3} \text{ square units.}$$

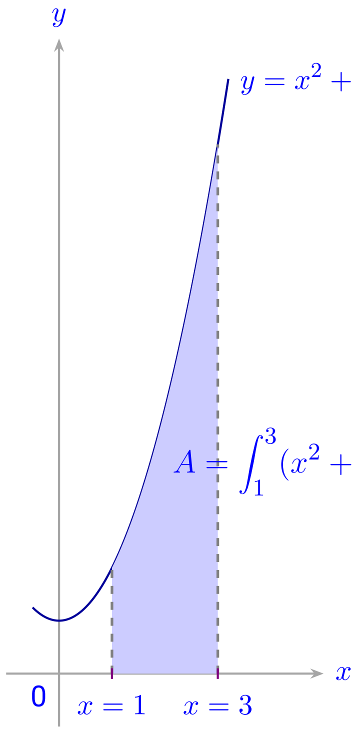

Figure 4.1. The region bounded by the parabola $y = x^2 + 1$, the x-axis, and the vertical lines (ordinates) at $x = 1$ and $x = 3$.

Example 4.2 Area Below the x-axis

Find the area of the region bounded by $y = x^2 - 4$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = -1$ and $x = 1$.

Solution. Refer to Figure 4.2 The curve $y = x^2 - 4$ is a parabola opening upwards with its vertex at $(0, -4)$. In the interval $[-1, 1]$, the function is negative. Therefore, the area

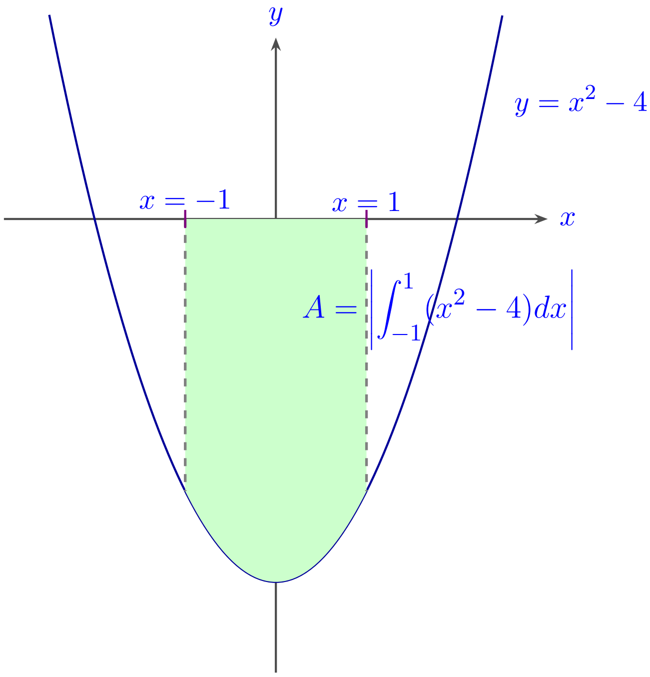

Figure 4.2. The region bounded by the parabola $y = x^2 - 4$, the x-axis, and the vertical lines $x = -1$ and $x = 1$. Since the region is below the x-axis, the area is the absolute value of the definite integral.

is the absolute value of the integral.

$$A = \left|\int_{-1}^{1} (x^2 - 4)\, dx\right| = \left|\left[\frac{x^3}{3} - 4x\right]_{-1}^{1}\right|$$

$$= \left|\left(\frac{1}{3} - 4\right) - \left(\frac{-1}{3} + 4\right)\right| = \left|-\frac{11}{3} - \frac{11}{3}\right| = \left|-\frac{22}{3}\right| = \frac{22}{3} \text{ square units.}$$

■

Example 4.3 Trigonometric Function

Find the area under one arch of the sine curve, i.e., the region bounded by $y = \sin x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$.

Solution. Refer to Figure 4.3. In the interval $[0, \pi]$, $\sin x$ is non-negative. The area is:

$$A = \int_0^{\pi} \sin x\, dx = [-\cos x]_0^{\pi} = (-\cos(\pi)) - (-\cos(0)) = (-(-1)) - (-1) = 1+1 = 2 \text{ square units.}$$

■

Example 4.4 Area with Respect to the y-axis

Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $x = y^2$, the y-axis, and the lines $y = 1$ and $y = 2$.

Solution. Refer to Figure 4.4. The region is bounded by the y-axis, so we integrate with respect to y. The function is $g(y) = y^2$, which is non-negative for $y \in [1, 2]$.

$$A = \int_1^2 y^2\, dy = \left[\frac{y^3}{3}\right]_1^2 = \frac{2^3}{3} - \frac{1^3}{3} = \frac{8}{3} - \frac{1}{3} = \frac{7}{3} \text{ square units.}$$

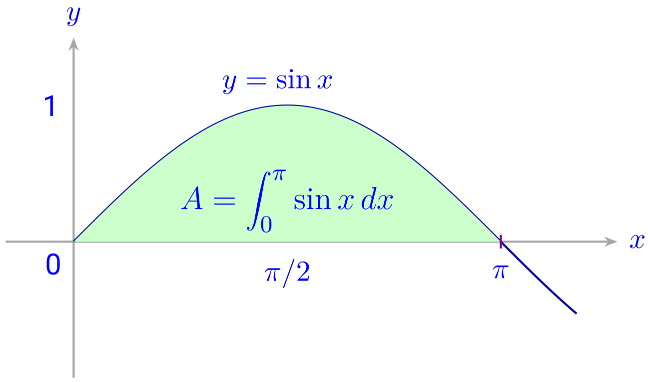

Figure 4.3. The region under one arch of the sine curve, bounded by $y = \sin x$, the x-axis, $x = 0$, and $x = \pi$.

■

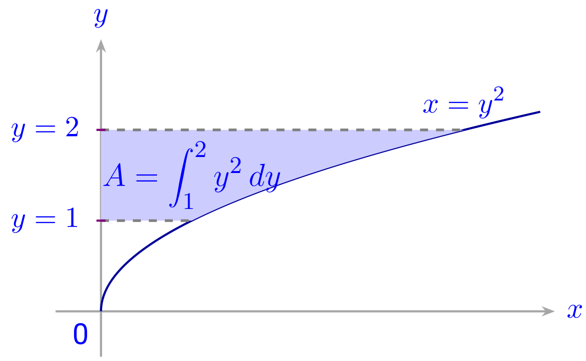

Figure 4.4. The region bounded by the parabola $x = y^2$, the y-axis ($x = 0$), and the horizontal lines (abscissae) at $y = 1$ and $y = 2$.

Example 4.5 Exponential Function

Find the area bounded by $y = e^x$, the x-axis, $x = 0$, and $x = 2$.

Solution. Refer to Figure 4.5. The function $y = e^x$ is always positive. The area is given by:

$$A = \int_0^2 e^x\,dx = [e^x]_0^2 = e^2 - e^0 = e^2 - 1 \text{ square units.}$$

■

Example 4.6 Logarithmic Function

Find the area of the region enclosed by $y = \ln x$, the x-axis, and the line $x = e$.

Proof. The curve $y = \ln x$ intersects the x-axis at $x = 1$. So we integrate from $x = 1$ to $x = e$. We use integration by parts for $\int \ln x\,dx$, which gives $x \ln x - x$.

$$A = \int_1^e \ln x\,dx = [x \ln x - x]_1^e = (e \ln e - e) - (1 \ln 1 - 1) = (e \cdot 1 - e) - (0 - 1) = 0 - (-1) = 1 \text{ square unit.}$$

■

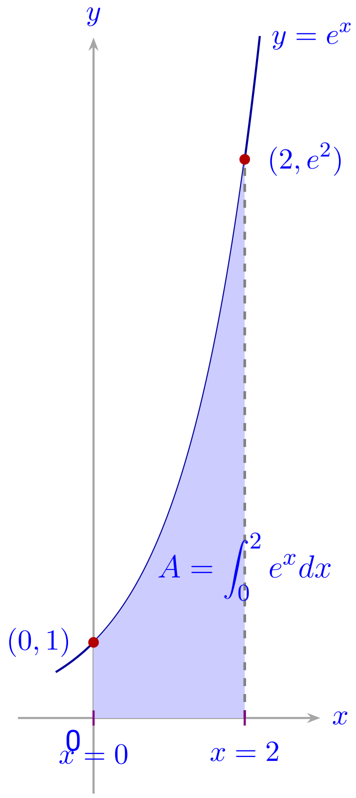

Figure 4.5. The region bounded by the exponential curve $y = e^x$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = 0$ and $x = 2$.

Example 4.7 Function Crossing the x-axis

Find the area of the region bounded by $y = x^3$, the x-axis, from $x = -2$ to $x = 1$.

Proof. The function $y = x^3$ crosses the x-axis at $x = 0$. It is negative on $[-2, 0)$ and positive on $(0, 1]$. We must split the integral at $x = 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= \int_{-2}^{1} |x^3|\,dx = \int_{-2}^{0} -x^3\,dx + \int_0^1 x^3\,dx \\
&= \left[-\frac{x^4}{4}\right]_{-2}^{0} + \left[\frac{x^4}{4}\right]_0^1 \\
&= \left(0 - \left(-\frac{(-2)^4}{4}\right)\right) + \left(\frac{1^4}{4} - 0\right) \\
&= (0 - (-4)) + \frac{1}{4} = 4 + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{17}{4} \text{ square units.}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 4.8 Area Bounded by a Line

Find the area of the region bounded by the line $y = 4 - x$, the x-axis, and the y-axis.

Proof. The y-intercept is at $y = 4$. The x-intercept (where $y = 0$) is at $x = 4$. The region is a triangle bounded by $x = 0$ and $x = 4$.

$$A = \int_0^4 (4 - x)\, dx = \left[4x - \frac{x^2}{2}\right]_0^4 = \left(4(4) - \frac{4^2}{2}\right) - (0) = 16 - \frac{16}{2} = 8 \text{ square units.}$$

■

Example 4.9 Symmetry

Find the area of the region bounded by $y = 4 - x^2$ and the x-axis.

Proof. The parabola intersects the x-axis when $4 - x^2 = 0$, i.e., at $x = -2$ and $x = 2$. The function is even, so the region is symmetric about the y-axis. We can find the area from 0 to 2 and double it.

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \int_{-2}^{2} (4 - x^2)\, dx = 2\int_0^2 (4 - x^2)\, dx \\ &= 2\left[4x - \frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^2 = 2\left(\left(4(2) - \frac{2^3}{3}\right) - 0\right) \\ &= 2\left(8 - \frac{8}{3}\right) = 2\left(\frac{16}{3}\right) = \frac{32}{3} \text{ square units.} \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 4.10 Area with Respect to y-axis, Negative Side

Find the area of the region bounded by $x = y^2 - 1$ and the y-axis.

Proof. The curve intersects the y-axis when $x = 0$, so $y^2 - 1 = 0$, which means $y = -1$ and $y = 1$. In this region, $x = y^2 - 1$ is negative. We integrate with respect to y from -1 to 1.

$$A = \int_{-1}^{1} |y^2 - 1|\, dy = \int_{-1}^{1} -(y^2 - 1)\, dy = \int_{-1}^{1} (1 - y^2)\, dy$$

The integrand is an even function, so we can simplify:

$$A = 2\int_0^1 (1 - y^2)\, dy = 2\left[y - \frac{y^3}{3}\right]_0^1 = 2\left(\left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) - 0\right) = 2\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) = \frac{4}{3} \text{ square units.}$$

■

Exercise 4.1

Find the area of the regions bounded by the following curves and axes over the specified intervals.

1. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $y = x^2 - 2x$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = 2$ and $x = 4$.
2. Find the area of the region enclosed by the parabola $y = 9 - x^2$ and the x-axis.
3. Find the area bounded by the curve $y = \cos(x)$, the x-axis, from $x = -\pi/2$ to $x = \pi/2$. (Hint: Consider using symmetry.)

4. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $x = y^2 + 1$, the y-axis, and the lines $y = 0$ and $y = 3$.
5. Find the total area of the region bounded by the curve $y = x^3 - 4x$ and the x-axis. (Hint: Find the x-intercepts and split the integral accordingly.)
6. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $y = e^x + 1$, the x-axis, the y-axis, and the line $x = 1$.
7. Find the area bounded by the curve $x = \sqrt{y}$, the y-axis, and the line $y = 4$.
8. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $y = 1/x$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = 1$ and $x = e^2$.
9. Find the area of the region enclosed by the curve $y = -x^2 - 2x$ and the x-axis.
10. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $x = \tan(y)$, the y-axis, and the line $y = \pi/4$.

4.1 Area of a Region in Polar Coordinates (Sectorial Area)

While Cartesian coordinates are ideal for finding areas using vertical or horizontal rectangles, **polar coordinates** are often better suited for regions that have a natural symmetry around the origin or are described by curves like circles, cardioids, and roses. The fundamental shape used to approximate area in polar coordinates is not a rectangle, but a **sector of a circle**.

The area of a region bounded by a polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ and two rays $\theta = \alpha$ and $\theta = \beta$ is called a **sectorial area**.

Derivation of the Polar Area Formula

Consider a region bounded by a continuous, non-negative polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ from $\theta = \alpha$ to $\theta = \beta$. To find the area of this region, we partition the angular interval $[\alpha, \beta]$ into n small subintervals, each with an angular width of $\Delta\theta$.

For each small subinterval, we can approximate the area of the corresponding slice of the region with the area of a sector of a circle. The area of a circular sector with radius r and angle θ (in radians) is given by $A = \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$.

For a small slice of our region with angular width $\Delta\theta$, we can choose a sample angle θ_i^* and use the radius $r_i = f(\theta_i^*)$. The area of this small approximating sector, ΔA_i, is:

$$\Delta A_i \approx \frac{1}{2}[f(\theta_i^*)]^2\Delta\theta$$

To find the total area, we sum the areas of all these small sectors and take the limit as the number of sectors n approaches infinity (which means $\Delta\theta \to 0$). This process yields a definite integral.

Area in Polar Coordinates

The area A of the region bounded by the polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ and the rays $\theta = \alpha$ and $\theta = \beta$ is given by:

$$A = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{1}{2}[f(\theta)]^2 \, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} r^2 \, d\theta$$

Finding the Limits of Integration

The most crucial part of solving polar area problems is determining the correct limits of integration, α and β. This often requires:

- Sketching the curve to understand its shape and how it is traced.
- Finding the values of θ where the curve passes through the origin (the pole), which occurs when $r = 0$.
- Utilizing the symmetry of the curve to calculate the area of a smaller piece and then multiplying the result.

Example 4.11 Area of a Circle

Find the area of a circle with radius a.

Proof. A circle of radius a centered at the origin is described by the simple polar equation $r = a$. The entire circle is traced as θ varies from 0 to 2π. Using the polar area formula, the area A is:

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{2\pi} r^2 \, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{2\pi} a^2 \, d\theta$$

Since a^2 is a constant, we have:

$$A = \frac{a^2}{2}\int_{0}^{2\pi} 1 \, d\theta = \frac{a^2}{2}[\theta]_0^{2\pi} = \frac{a^2}{2}(2\pi - 0) = \pi a^2$$

This correctly reproduces the well-known formula for the area of a circle. ■

Example 4.12 Area of a Cardioid

Find the total area enclosed by the cardioid $r = a(1 + \cos\theta)$.

Proof. The cardioid is a heart-shaped curve that is symmetric about the polar axis (the x-axis). It is traced once as θ goes from 0 to 2π. Due to symmetry, we can find the area of the top half (from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$) and double the result. The area A is:

$$A = 2\left[\frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{\pi} (a(1 + \cos\theta))^2 \, d\theta\right] = a^2 \int_{0}^{\pi} (1 + 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta) \, d\theta$$

We use the power-reducing identity $\cos^2\theta = \dfrac{1 + \cos(2\theta)}{2}$.

$$A = a^2 \int_{0}^{\pi} \left(1 + 2\cos\theta + \frac{1 + \cos(2\theta)}{2}\right) d\theta = a^2 \int_{0}^{\pi} \left(\frac{3}{2} + 2\cos\theta + \frac{1}{2}\cos(2\theta)\right) d\theta$$

$$= a^2 \left[\frac{3}{2}\theta + 2\sin\theta + \frac{1}{4}\sin(2\theta) \right]_0^\pi$$
$$= a^2 \left(\left(\frac{3\pi}{2} + 2\sin\pi + \frac{1}{4}\sin(2\pi) \right) - (0+0+0) \right) = \frac{3\pi a^2}{2}$$

■

Example 4.13 Area of a Four-Leaved Rose

Find the total area of the rose curve given by $r = a\cos(2\theta)$.

Proof. This curve has four "petals" or leaves. One full leaf in the first quadrant is traced as 2θ goes from $-\pi/2$ to $\pi/2$, which means θ goes from $-\pi/4$ to $\pi/4$. The total area is four times the area of this single leaf. The area A is:

$$A = 4 \left[\frac{1}{2} \int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} (a\cos(2\theta))^2 \, d\theta \right] = 2a^2 \int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} \cos^2(2\theta) \, d\theta$$

Since the integrand is an even function, we can simplify the integral:

$$A = 2a^2 \cdot 2 \int_0^{\pi/4} \cos^2(2\theta) \, d\theta = 4a^2 \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1+\cos(4\theta)}{2} \, d\theta$$

$$A = 2a^2 \left[\theta + \frac{\sin(4\theta)}{4} \right]_0^{\pi/4} = 2a^2 \left((\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\sin\pi}{4}) - (0) \right) = 2a^2 \left(\frac{\pi}{4} \right) = \frac{\pi a^2}{2}$$

■

Example 4.14 Area of a Lemniscate

Find the area of one loop of the lemniscate $r^2 = a^2\cos(2\theta)$.

Proof. The lemniscate has two loops and looks like a figure-eight. For r to be real, we must have $\cos(2\theta) \geq 0$. One loop is traced when 2θ is in the interval $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$, which means θ is in $[-\pi/4, \pi/4]$. The area A of this single loop is:

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} r^2 \, d\theta = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} a^2 \cos(2\theta) \, d\theta$$

Since the integrand is an even function, we can integrate from 0 to $\pi/4$ and double the result.

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 \int_0^{\pi/4} a^2 \cos(2\theta) \, d\theta = a^2 \int_0^{\pi/4} \cos(2\theta) \, d\theta$$

$$A = a^2 \left[\frac{\sin(2\theta)}{2} \right]_0^{\pi/4} = \frac{a^2}{2} [\sin(\pi/2) - \sin(0)] = \frac{a^2}{2}(1-0) = \frac{a^2}{2}$$

■

Example 4.15 Area Between Two Curves

Find the area of the region that lies inside the circle $r = 3\sin\theta$ and outside the cardioid $r = 1 + \sin\theta$.

Proof. First, we find the points of intersection by setting the radii equal: $3\sin\theta = 1 + \sin\theta \implies 2\sin\theta = 1 \implies \sin\theta = 1/2$. This occurs at $\theta = \pi/6$ and $\theta = 5\pi/6$. The area of a region between two polar curves r_{outer} and r_{inner} is given by $A = \frac{1}{2}\int_\alpha^\beta (r_{outer}^2 - r_{inner}^2)\, d\theta$. In our region, the circle $r = 3\sin\theta$ is the outer curve.

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= \frac{1}{2}\int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} \left[(3\sin\theta)^2 - (1+\sin\theta)^2\right] d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} (9\sin^2\theta - (1 + 2\sin\theta + \sin^2\theta))d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} (8\sin^2\theta - 2\sin\theta - 1)d\theta
\end{aligned}$$

Using $\sin^2\theta = \dfrac{1-\cos(2\theta)}{2}$, we get:

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= \frac{1}{2}\int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} (8\frac{1-\cos(2\theta)}{2} - 2\sin\theta - 1)d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} (3 - 4\cos(2\theta) - 2\sin\theta)d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[3\theta - 2\sin(2\theta) + 2\cos\theta\right]_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\left(\frac{15\pi}{6} - 2\sin(\frac{5\pi}{3}) + 2\cos(\frac{5\pi}{6})\right) - \left(\frac{3\pi}{6} - 2\sin(\frac{\pi}{3}) + 2\cos(\frac{\pi}{6})\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\left(\frac{5\pi}{2} - 2(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}) + 2(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})\right) - \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}) + 2(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[(\frac{5\pi}{2} + \sqrt{3} - \sqrt{3}) - (\frac{\pi}{2} - \sqrt{3} + \sqrt{3})\right] = \frac{1}{2}(\frac{4\pi}{2}) = \pi
\end{aligned}$$

■

Example 4.16 Area of an Inner Loop

Find the area of the inner loop of the limaçon $r = 1 + 2\cos\theta$.

Proof. An inner loop is formed when the curve passes through the pole ($r = 0$) and then returns. We find when $r = 0$: $1 + 2\cos\theta = 0 \implies \cos\theta = -1/2$. In the interval $[0, 2\pi]$, this occurs at $\theta = 2\pi/3$ and $\theta = 4\pi/3$. The inner loop is traced between these two angles. The area A is:

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_{2\pi/3}^{4\pi/3} (1 + 2\cos\theta)^2\, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_{2\pi/3}^{4\pi/3} (1 + 4\cos\theta + 4\cos^2\theta)\, d\theta$$

Using $\cos^2\theta = \dfrac{1+\cos(2\theta)}{2}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= \frac{1}{2}\int_{2\pi/3}^{4\pi/3} (1 + 4\cos\theta + 4\frac{1+\cos(2\theta)}{2})\, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_{2\pi/3}^{4\pi/3} (3 + 4\cos\theta + 2\cos(2\theta))\, d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[3\theta + 4\sin\theta + \sin(2\theta)\right]_{2\pi/3}^{4\pi/3} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[(4\pi + 4\sin(\frac{4\pi}{3}) + \sin(\frac{8\pi}{3})) - (2\pi + 4\sin(\frac{2\pi}{3}) + \sin(\frac{4\pi}{3}))\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left[(4\pi - 2\sqrt{3} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}) - (2\pi + 2\sqrt{3} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left[2\pi - 4\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{3}\right] = \pi - \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

■

Exercise 4.2

Find the area of the regions described by the following polar curves. Sketching the region first is highly recommended.

1. **Area of a Single Loop:** Find the area of the region enclosed by one loop of the three-leaved rose given by the equation $r = a\sin(3\theta)$.
2. **Total Area of a Cardioid:** Find the total area of the region enclosed by the cardioid $r = 2(1 - \sin\theta)$.
3. **Area of a Circle (Off-center):** Find the area of the region enclosed by the circle $r = 4\cos\theta$. (Hint: Determine the limits needed to trace the circle once.)
4. **Area of an Inner Loop:** Find the area of the region corresponding to the inner loop of the limaçon $r = 1 - 2\sin\theta$.
5. **Area Between Curves:** Find the area of the region that lies inside the circle $r = 1$ but outside the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.
6. **Area of a Spiral:** Find the area of the region bounded by the spiral $r = \theta$ for $0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$.

4.2 Volumes and Areas of Surfaces of Revolution

A **solid of revolution** is a three-dimensional object generated by rotating a two-dimensional planar region around a line, known as the **axis of revolution**. For example, rotating a rectangle around one of its sides generates a cylinder, and rotating a semi-circle around its diameter generates a sphere. Calculus provides powerful tools to compute the exact volume and surface area of these complex shapes.

4.2.1 Volumes of Solids of Revolution

There are three primary methods for finding the volume of a solid of revolution: the Disk Method, the Washer Method, and the Cylindrical Shell Method. The choice of method depends on the geometry of the region and the axis of revolution.

The Disk Method

The Disk Method is used when the region being revolved is flush against the axis of revolution. The fundamental idea is to slice the solid into a series of thin, circular disks perpendicular to the axis of revolution.

If we revolve a region bounded by $y = f(x)$, the x-axis, $x = a$, and $x = b$ around the x-axis, a single slice at position x with thickness dx forms a disk. The radius of this disk is $R = f(x)$. The volume of this infinitesimal disk is the area of its circular face times its thickness: $dV = \pi R^2\,dx = \pi[f(x)]^2\,dx$. The total volume is the sum of the volumes of all such disks, found by integration.

Volume by the Disk Method

- **Revolution about the x-axis:** For a region bounded by $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$V = \int_a^b \pi[f(x)]^2\,dx$$

- **Revolution about the y-axis:** For a region bounded by $x = g(y)$ from $y = c$ to $y = d$:

$$V = \int_c^d \pi[g(y)]^2\,dy$$

The Washer Method

The Washer Method is an extension of the Disk Method used when there is a gap between the region and the axis of revolution. Revolving such a region creates a solid with a hole in the middle.

A slice of this solid is a "washer" (a disk with a smaller disk removed from its center). The volume of an infinitesimal washer is the volume of the outer disk minus the volume of the inner disk: $dV = (\pi R_{outer}^2 - \pi R_{inner}^2)\,dx$.

Volume by the Washer Method

For a region between two curves, $y = f(x)$ (outer radius) and $y = g(x)$ (inner radius), revolved about the x-axis from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$V = \int_a^b \pi\left([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2\right)\,dx$$

(A similar formula applies for revolution about the y-axis).

The Cylindrical Shell Method

The Shell Method is an alternative approach where the solid is sliced into a series of nested, thin cylindrical shells parallel to the axis of revolution.

Consider revolving the region under $y = f(x)$ about the y-axis. A thin vertical rectangle at position x with width dx and height $h = f(x)$ is revolved to form a cylindrical shell. The volume of this shell is its circumference times its height times its thickness: $dV = (2\pi r)\cdot h\cdot dx$. Here, the radius is $r = x$ and the height is $h = f(x)$.

Volume by the Cylindrical Shell Method

- **Revolution about the y-axis:** For a region under $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$V = \int_a^b 2\pi x f(x)\, dx$$

- **Revolution about the x-axis:** For a region bounded by $x = g(y)$ from $y = c$ to $y = d$:

$$V = \int_c^d 2\pi y g(y)\, dy$$

4.2.2 Area of a Surface of Revolution

To find the area of a surface generated by revolving a curve about an axis, we consider the surface area of a small segment of the curve (a frustum of a cone). The infinitesimal surface area element, dS, is the circumference of revolution times the arc length element, ds.

$$dS = (2\pi \cdot \text{radius}) \cdot ds$$

where $ds = \sqrt{1 + (y')^2}dx$ or $ds = \sqrt{1 + (x')^2}dy$.

Area of a Surface of Revolution

- **Revolution about the x-axis:** For a curve $y = f(x) \geq 0$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$, the radius is y.

$$A = \int_a^b 2\pi y \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}\, dx$$

- **Revolution about the y-axis:** For a curve $x = g(y) \geq 0$ from $y = c$ to $y = d$, the radius is x.

$$A = \int_c^d 2\pi x \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2}\, dy$$

Example 4.17 Disk Method

Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$, the x-axis, and the line $x = 4$ about the x-axis.

Proof. The region is flush against the x-axis, so we use the Disk Method. The radius of a disk at position x is $R(x) = \sqrt{x}$. The volume is found by integrating from $x = 0$ to $x = 4$.

$$V = \int_0^4 \pi[R(x)]^2\, dx = \int_0^4 \pi(\sqrt{x})^2\, dx = \pi \int_0^4 x\, dx$$

$$V = \pi \left[\frac{x^2}{2}\right]_0^4 = \pi\left(\frac{4^2}{2} - 0\right) = 8\pi \text{ cubic units.}$$

■

Example 4.18 Disk Method for a Cone

Find the volume of a cone generated by revolving the line $y = 2x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 3$ about the x-axis.

Proof. Using the Disk Method, the radius of a typical disk is $R(x) = 2x$. The volume is:

$$V = \int_0^3 \pi(2x)^2\,dx = \pi\int_0^3 4x^2\,dx = 4\pi\left[\frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^3 = 4\pi\left(\frac{27}{3}\right) = 36\pi \text{ cubic units.}$$

■

Example 4.19 Washer Method

Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by the curves $y = x^2$ and $y = \sqrt{x}$ about the x-axis.

Proof. The curves intersect at $x = 0$ and $x = 1$. In the interval $[0, 1]$, the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$ is above $y = x^2$. Therefore, the outer radius is $R_{outer} = \sqrt{x}$ and the inner radius is $R_{inner} = x^2$. Using the Washer Method:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_0^1 \pi\left((\sqrt{x})^2 - (x^2)^2\right)\,dx = \pi\int_0^1 (x - x^4)\,dx \\ &= \pi\left[\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^5}{5}\right]_0^1 = \pi\left((\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{5}) - 0\right) = \pi\left(\frac{5-2}{10}\right) = \frac{3\pi}{10} \text{ cubic units.} \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 4.20 Washer Method

Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region enclosed by $y = 4$ and $y = x^2$ about the line $y = 4$.

Proof. The axis of revolution is $y = 4$. We must redefine our radii relative to this line. The outer radius is zero since the region is flush against the axis of revolution. This is a special case of the washer method that becomes the disk method. The radius of a disk is the distance from the axis $y = 4$ to the curve $y = x^2$, which is $R(x) = 4 - x^2$. The region is bounded by $x = -2$ and $x = 2$.

$$V = \int_{-2}^2 \pi(4 - x^2)^2\,dx = \pi\int_{-2}^2 (16 - 8x^2 + x^4)\,dx$$

Since the integrand is even, we can integrate from 0 to 2 and double the result.

$$V = 2\pi\left[16x - \frac{8x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5}\right]_0^2 = 2\pi\left(32 - \frac{64}{3} + \frac{32}{5}\right) = 2\pi\left(\frac{480 - 320 + 96}{15}\right) = \frac{512\pi}{15} \text{ cubic units.}$$

■

Example 4.21 Shell Method

Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y = 2x^2 - x^3$ and the x-axis about the y-axis.

Proof. The curve intersects the x-axis at $x^2(2-x) = 0$, so at $x = 0$ and $x = 2$. Using the Shell Method for revolution about the y-axis, the radius of a shell is $r = x$ and its height is $h = y = 2x^2 - x^3$.

$$V = \int_0^2 2\pi x(2x^2 - x^3)\,dx = 2\pi \int_0^2 (2x^3 - x^4)\,dx$$

$$V = 2\pi \left[\frac{2x^4}{4} - \frac{x^5}{5}\right]_0^2 = 2\pi \left[\frac{x^4}{2} - \frac{x^5}{5}\right]_0^2 = 2\pi\left(\frac{16}{2} - \frac{32}{5}\right) = 2\pi\left(8 - \frac{32}{5}\right) = 2\pi\left(\frac{40-32}{5}\right) = \frac{16\pi}{5} \text{ cubic u}$$

■

Example 4.22 Shell Method

Use the shell method to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $x = \sqrt{y}$, $x = 0$, and $y = 4$ about the x-axis.

Proof. For revolution about the x-axis, we integrate with respect to y. The radius of a cylindrical shell is $r = y$. The height of the shell is the length of the horizontal segment from the y-axis to the curve, so $h = x = \sqrt{y}$.

$$V = \int_0^4 2\pi y(\sqrt{y})\,dy = 2\pi \int_0^4 y^{3/2}\,dy$$

$$V = 2\pi\left[\frac{2}{5}y^{5/2}\right]_0^4 = \frac{4\pi}{5}(4^{5/2} - 0) = \frac{4\pi}{5}(32) = \frac{128\pi}{5} \text{ cubic units.}$$

■

Example 4.23 Surface Area

Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ from $x = -1$ to $x = 1$ about the x-axis.

Proof. This curve is a semi-circle. We first find the derivative: $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-2x}{2\sqrt{4-x^2}} = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}$. Next, we compute the term $\sqrt{1 + (y')^2}$.

$$1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 = 1 + \frac{x^2}{4 - x^2} = \frac{4 - x^2 + x^2}{4 - x^2} = \frac{4}{4 - x^2}$$

The arc length element is $\sqrt{\frac{4}{4-x^2}}\,dx = \frac{2}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx$. The radius of revolution is $r = y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$. The surface area is:

$$A = \int_{-1}^1 2\pi y\sqrt{1 + (y')^2}\,dx = \int_{-1}^1 2\pi\sqrt{4 - x^2} \cdot \frac{2}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx$$

$$A = \int_{-1}^{1} 4\pi \, dx = [4\pi x]_{-1}^{1} = 4\pi(1) - 4\pi(-1) = 8\pi \text{ square units.}$$

■

Example 4.24 Surface Area

Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the line segment $y = 1 - x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ about the y-axis.

Proof. For revolution about the y-axis, the radius is $r = x$. We must express the curve as a function of y: $x = 1 - y$. The y-limits are from $y = 0$ to $y = 1$. The derivative is $\frac{dx}{dy} = -1$. The arc length element is $\sqrt{1 + (-1)^2} \, dy = \sqrt{2} \, dy$. The surface area is:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \int_0^1 2\pi x \sqrt{1 + (x')^2} \, dy = \int_0^1 2\pi(1 - y)\sqrt{2} \, dy \\ &= 2\pi\sqrt{2} \int_0^1 (1 - y) \, dy = 2\pi\sqrt{2} \left[y - \frac{y^2}{2} \right]_0^1 \\ &= 2\pi\sqrt{2} \left((1 - \frac{1}{2}) - 0 \right) = 2\pi\sqrt{2} \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) = \pi\sqrt{2} \text{ square units.} \end{aligned}$$

■

Example 4.25 Volume by Disks - A Sphere

Find the volume of a sphere of radius r by revolving the semi-circle $y = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$ about the x-axis.

Proof. The region is bounded by the semi-circle and the x-axis, from $x = -r$ to $x = r$. We use the Disk Method, where the radius of a disk at position x is $R(x) = y = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$. The volume V is given by the integral:

$$V = \int_{-r}^{r} \pi [R(x)]^2 \, dx = \int_{-r}^{r} \pi (\sqrt{r^2 - x^2})^2 \, dx = \pi \int_{-r}^{r} (r^2 - x^2) \, dx$$

Since the integrand is an even function, we can simplify the calculation by integrating from 0 to r and doubling the result.

$$V = 2\pi \int_0^r (r^2 - x^2) \, dx = 2\pi \left[r^2 x - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^r = 2\pi \left((r^3 - \frac{r^3}{3}) - 0 \right) = 2\pi \left(\frac{2r^3}{3} \right) = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$$

This correctly derives the well-known formula for the volume of a sphere. ■

Example 4.26 Volume by Washers - Off-axis Revolution

Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $y = x$ about the line $x = -1$.

Proof. The region is bounded by $y = x$ (top) and $y = x^2$ (bottom), intersecting at $(0, 0)$ and $(1, 1)$. Since we are revolving about a vertical line ($x = -1$), it is easiest to use horizontal slices (integrating with respect to y) and the Washer Method. We must express the boundaries as functions of y: $x = y$ and $x = \sqrt{y}$. For a fixed y in $[0, 1]$, the right curve is $x = \sqrt{y}$ and the left curve is $x = y$. The outer radius R_{outer} is the distance from the axis $x = -1$ to the outer curve $x = \sqrt{y}$, so $R_{outer} = \sqrt{y} - (-1) = \sqrt{y} + 1$. The inner radius R_{inner} is the distance from the axis $x = -1$ to the inner curve $x = y$, so $R_{inner} = y - (-1) = y + 1$. The volume is given by the washer method integral with respect to y:

$$
\begin{aligned}
V &= \int_0^1 \pi \left((\sqrt{y}+1)^2 - (y+1)^2\right) dy = \pi \int_0^1 \left((y + 2\sqrt{y} + 1) - (y^2 + 2y + 1)\right) dy \\
&= \pi \int_0^1 (-y^2 - y + 2y^{1/2})\, dy = \pi \left[-\frac{y^3}{3} - \frac{y^2}{2} + 2\frac{y^{3/2}}{3/2}\right]_0^1 \\
&= \pi \left[-\frac{y^3}{3} - \frac{y^2}{2} + \frac{4}{3}y^{3/2}\right]_0^1 = \pi\left(-\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{4}{3}\right) = \pi\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{\pi}{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

■

Example 4.27 Volume by Shells

Use the cylindrical shell method to find the volume of the solid obtained by rotating the region under the curve $y = \sin(x^2)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \sqrt{\pi}$ about the y-axis.

Proof. We are rotating a region defined by a function of x about the y-axis, which is the ideal setup for the shell method. The radius of a cylindrical shell at position x is $r = x$, and its height is $h = y = \sin(x^2)$. The integration is from $x = 0$ to $x = \sqrt{\pi}$. The volume V is:

$$V = \int_0^{\sqrt{\pi}} 2\pi x \sin(x^2)\, dx$$

This integral is perfectly set up for a u-substitution. Let $u = x^2$, so $du = 2x\, dx$. We also change the limits of integration: when $x = 0, u = 0$, and when $x = \sqrt{\pi}, u = \pi$.

$$V = \int_0^{\pi} \pi \sin(u)\, du = \pi[-\cos u]_0^{\pi} = \pi(-\cos\pi - (-\cos 0)) = \pi(-(-1) - (-1)) = \pi(1+1) = 2\pi$$

■

Example 4.28 Surface Area - Catenary

Find the surface area generated by revolving the catenary $y = a\cosh(x/a)$ from $x = -a$ to $x = a$ about the x-axis.

Proof. The curve is revolved about the x-axis, so the radius of revolution is $r = y = a\cosh(x/a)$. First, we find the derivative y':

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a \cdot \sinh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{a} = \sinh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$$

The arc length element ds requires the term $\sqrt{1+(y')^2}$. Using the identity $1+\sinh^2 u = \cosh^2 u$:

$$\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} = \sqrt{1+\sinh^2(x/a)} = \sqrt{\cosh^2(x/a)} = \cosh(x/a)$$

The surface area A is given by the integral $\int 2\pi y\, ds$.

$$A = \int_{-a}^{a} 2\pi \left(a\cosh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)\right)\cosh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)\, dx = 2\pi a \int_{-a}^{a} \cosh^2\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)\, dx$$

Using the identity $\cosh^2 u = \dfrac{1+\cosh(2u)}{2}$, and noting the integrand is even:

$$A = 2(2\pi a)\int_0^a \frac{1+\cosh(2x/a)}{2}\, dx = 2\pi a \int_0^a (1+\cosh(2x/a))\, dx$$
$$= 2\pi a\left[x + \frac{a}{2}\sinh(2x/a)\right]_0^a = 2\pi a\left((a+\frac{a}{2}\sinh(2)) - 0\right) = 2\pi a^2\left(1+\frac{\sinh(2)}{2}\right)$$

Using $\sinh(2) = 2\sinh(1)\cosh(1)$, this simplifies to $2\pi a^2(1+\sinh(1)\cosh(1))$. ■

Example 4.29 Surface Area - Parametric Curve

Find the surface area of the sphere of radius r by revolving the semi-circle $x = r\cos t, y = r\sin t$ for $0 \le t \le \pi$ about the x-axis.

Proof. The radius of revolution about the x-axis is $y = r\sin t$. We need the arc length element ds for a parametric curve. First, find the derivatives with respect to t:

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -r\sin t \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{dt} = r\cos t$$

The arc length element is $ds = \sqrt{(\frac{dx}{dt})^2 + (\frac{dy}{dt})^2}\, dt$.

$$(\frac{dx}{dt})^2 + (\frac{dy}{dt})^2 = (-r\sin t)^2 + (r\cos t)^2 = r^2(\sin^2 t + \cos^2 t) = r^2$$

So, $ds = \sqrt{r^2}\, dt = r\, dt$. The surface area integral is:

$$A = \int_0^{\pi} 2\pi y\, ds = \int_0^{\pi} 2\pi(r\sin t)(r\, dt) = 2\pi r^2 \int_0^{\pi} \sin t\, dt$$

$$A = 2\pi r^2[-\cos t]_0^{\pi} = 2\pi r^2(-\cos\pi - (-\cos 0)) = 2\pi r^2(-(-1) - (-1)) = 2\pi r^2(2) = 4\pi r^2$$

This correctly derives the formula for the surface area of a sphere. ■

Example 4.30 Surface Area - Revolution about y-axis

Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve $x = \sqrt{9-y^2}$ from $y = 0$ to $y = 2$ about the y-axis.

Proof. The revolution is about the y-axis, so the radius is $r = x = \sqrt{9-y^2}$. We need the derivative with respect to y:

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{-2y}{2\sqrt{9-y^2}} = \frac{-y}{\sqrt{9-y^2}}$$

The arc length element requires $\sqrt{1+(x')^2}$.

$$1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2 = 1 + \frac{y^2}{9-y^2} = \frac{9-y^2+y^2}{9-y^2} = \frac{9}{9-y^2}$$

The surface area integral is $\int_0^2 2\pi x \, ds$:

$$A = \int_0^2 2\pi\left(\sqrt{9-y^2}\right)\sqrt{\frac{9}{9-y^2}}\, dy = \int_0^2 2\pi\sqrt{9-y^2} \cdot \frac{3}{\sqrt{9-y^2}}\, dy$$

The terms cancel beautifully, leaving:

$$A = \int_0^2 6\pi \, dy = [6\pi y]_0^2 = 6\pi(2) - 0 = 12\pi$$

■

4.3 Unsolved Exercises Based on Chapter IV

Exercise 4.3

Find the area of the regions described below. Sketching the region is highly recommended.

1. Find the area of the region bounded by the parabola $y = 4x - x^2$ and the x-axis.
2. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$, the x-axis, and the lines $x = 1$ and $x = 3$.
3. Find the area of the region enclosed by the curves $y = x^2$ and $y = \sqrt{x}$.
4. Find the area of the region enclosed by the line $y = x - 1$ and the parabola $y^2 = 2x + 6$.
5. **(Polar)** Find the total area enclosed by the three-leaved rose $r = a\sin(3\theta)$.
6. **(Polar)** Find the area of the region that lies inside the circle $r = 2\cos\theta$ and outside the circle $r = 1$.

Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the given region about the specified axis.

7. The region bounded by $y = e^x$, $y = 0$, $x = 0$, and $x = 1$ is revolved about the x-axis. (Use the Disk Method).
8. The region enclosed by the curves $y = x$ and $y = x^2$ is revolved about the x-axis.

(Use the Washer Method).

9. The region under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$ from $x = 1$ to $x = 4$ is revolved about the y-axis. (Use the Cylindrical Shell Method).
10. The region bounded by $x = y^2$ and $x = 1$ is revolved about the line $x = 1$. (Use the Disk Method with respect to y).
11. The region bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$, the x-axis, and the line $x = 4$ is revolved about the y-axis. (Use either the Washer or Shell Method).
12. The region enclosed by $y = x^3$, $y = 8$, and $x = 0$ is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume.

Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the given curve about the specified axis.

13. The curve $y = x^3$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ is revolved about the x-axis.
14. The curve $x = \frac{1}{3}(y^2 + 2)^{3/2}$ from $y = 1$ to $y = 2$ is revolved about the x-axis.
15. The arc of the parabola $y^2 = 4x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 2$ is revolved about the x-axis.
16. Find the surface area of a sphere of radius a by revolving the semi-circle $x = \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}$ about the y-axis.
17. **(Parametric)** The astroid $x = a\cos^3 t, y = a\sin^3 t$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the total surface area.
18. The curve $y = e^{-x}$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \infty$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the surface area (an improper integral).

Chapter 5

Introduction to Differential Equations

This unit marks a shift from integral calculus to the study of **differential equations** — equations that involve an unknown function and its derivatives. We will begin by exploring various methods for solving **first-order linear differential equations**, including the use of an integrating factor and identifying exact equations. We will then extend our analysis to **second and higher-order linear equations with constant coefficients**, laying the groundwork for modeling a vast array of physical phenomena in science and engineering.

5.1 Linear First-Order Differential Equations and Integrating Factors

Introduction

A **first-order linear differential equation** is an equation that can be written in the following standard form:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = Q(x)$$

where $P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ are continuous functions of x. The term "linear" refers to the fact that the dependent variable y and its derivative $\frac{dy}{dx}$ appear only to the first power.

Equations of this type cannot typically be solved by direct integration or separation of variables. The key to solving them is to multiply the entire equation by a special function, called the **integrating factor**, which transforms the left-hand side into the derivative of a product.

Derivation of the Integrating Factor

Our goal is to find a function, let's call it $I(x)$, such that when we multiply the standard form by it, the left side becomes the result of the product rule. Multiplying the standard form by $I(x)$ gives:

$$I(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + I(x)P(x)y = I(x)Q(x)$$

We want the left side to be equal to the derivative of the product $I(x)y$. Using the product rule, this derivative is:

$$\frac{d}{dx}[I(x)y] = I(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{dI}{dx}y$$

By comparing the two expressions for the left-hand side, we see they will be identical if:

$$I(x)P(x)y = \frac{dI}{dx}y \implies I(x)P(x) = \frac{dI}{dx}$$

This is a separable differential equation for our unknown function $I(x)$. We can solve it for $I(x)$:

$$\frac{dI}{I} = P(x)\,dx$$

Integrating both sides:

$$\int \frac{dI}{I} = \int P(x)\,dx \implies \ln|I| = \int P(x)\,dx$$

Solving for I, we get $I(x) = e^{\int P(x)\,dx}$. This is our integrating factor. We can omit the constant of integration since we only need one such function.

Solution Method using an Integrating Factor

To solve a first-order linear differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} + P(x)y = Q(x)$:

1. **Find the Integrating Factor (I.F.):** Calculate $I(x) = e^{\int P(x)\,dx}$.
2. **Multiply:** Multiply the entire standard-form equation by $I(x)$. The left side will automatically become $\frac{d}{dx}[I(x)y]$.

$$\frac{d}{dx}[I(x)y] = I(x)Q(x)$$

3. **Integrate:** Integrate both sides with respect to x.

$$I(x)y = \int I(x)Q(x)\,dx + C$$

4. **Solve for y:** Isolate y to obtain the general solution.

$$y = \frac{1}{I(x)}\left(\int I(x)Q(x)\,dx + C\right)$$

Example 5.1

Solve the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} - 3y = 6$.

Proof. This equation is in the standard form with $P(x) = -3$ and $Q(x) = 6$. First, we find the integrating factor, $I(x)$.

$$I(x) = e^{\int -3\,dx} = e^{-3x}$$

We multiply the entire differential equation by e^{-3x}:

$$e^{-3x}\frac{dy}{dx} - 3e^{-3x}y = 6e^{-3x}$$

The left-hand side is now the derivative of the product $(e^{-3x}y)$.

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^{-3x}y) = 6e^{-3x}$$

Integrating both sides with respect to x:

$$\int \frac{d}{dx}(e^{-3x}y)\,dx = \int 6e^{-3x}\,dx$$

$$e^{-3x}y = 6\left(\frac{e^{-3x}}{-3}\right) + C = -2e^{-3x} + C$$

Finally, we solve for y by multiplying by e^{3x}.

$$y = -2 + Ce^{3x}$$

■

Example 5.2

Find the general solution of $x\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = x^3$ for $x > 0$.

Proof. First, we put the equation into standard form by dividing by x:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{2}{x}y = x^2$$

Here, $P(x) = \frac{2}{x}$ and $Q(x) = x^2$. The integrating factor is:

$$I(x) = e^{\int \frac{2}{x}\,dx} = e^{2\ln x} = e^{\ln(x^2)} = x^2$$

Multiplying the standard form by x^2:

$$x^2\frac{dy}{dx} + 2xy = x^4$$

The left side is the derivative of the product (x^2y).

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^2y) = x^4$$

Integrating both sides with respect to x:

$$\int \frac{d}{dx}(x^2y)\,dx = \int x^4\,dx$$

$$x^2y = \frac{x^5}{5} + C$$

Solving for y gives the general solution:

$$y = \frac{x^3}{5} + \frac{C}{x^2}$$

■

Example 5.3

Solve $\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y\cot x = 2\cos x$.

Proof. The equation is in standard form with $P(x) = \cot x$ and $Q(x) = 2\cos x$. The integrating factor is:

$$I(x) = e^{\int \cot x\, dx} = e^{\ln|\sin x|} = \sin x \quad (\text{assuming } \sin x > 0)$$

Therefore, the solution is given by

$$y \sin x = \int 2\cos x \sin x\, dx = \int \sin(2x)\, dx$$

or

$$y \sin x = -\frac{\cos(2x)}{2} + C$$

Solving for y:

$$y = \frac{C - \frac{1}{2}\cos(2x)}{\sin x} = C\csc x - \frac{\cos(2x)}{2\sin x}$$

■

Example 5.4

Solve the initial value problem $(x^2+1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} + 3xy = 6x$, with $y(0) = 1$.

Proof. First, we write the equation in standard form by dividing by (x^2+1):

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{3x}{x^2+1}y = \frac{6x}{x^2+1}$$

Here, $P(x) = \dfrac{3x}{x^2+1}$ and $Q(x) = \dfrac{6x}{x^2+1}$. The integrating factor is found by integrating $P(x)$. Using a substitution $u = x^2 + 1$:

$$\int \frac{3x}{x^2+1}\, dx = \frac{3}{2}\int \frac{1}{u}\, du = \frac{3}{2}\ln(x^2+1) = \ln((x^2+1)^{3/2})$$

So, the integrating factor is $I(x) = e^{\ln((x^2+1)^{3/2})} = (x^2+1)^{3/2}$.

Therefore, the solution is;

$$y(x^2+1)^{3/2} = \int 6x(x^2+1)^{1/2}\, dx$$

Let $u = x^2 + 1$, so $du = 2x\, dx$, and $6x\, dx = 3\, du$.

$$y(x^2+1)^{3/2} = \int 3u^{1/2}\, du = 3\frac{u^{3/2}}{3/2} + C = 2u^{3/2} + C = 2(x^2+1)^{3/2} + C$$

The general solution for y is $y = 2 + C(x^2+1)^{-3/2}$. Now we apply the initial condition $y(0) = 1$.

$$1 = 2 + C(0^2+1)^{-3/2} \implies 1 = 2 + C \implies C = -1$$

The particular solution is $y = 2 - (x^2+1)^{-3/2}$. ■

5.1.1 Exact First-Order Differential Equations

An exact differential equation is a specific type of first-order ordinary differential equation that arises directly from the total differential of a multivariable function. The key characteristic of an exact equation is that its solution is represented implicitly by a level curve of some potential function.

A first-order differential equation is written in the differential form:

$$M(x, y)\, dx + N(x, y)\, dy = 0$$

This equation is called **exact** if the expression on the left-hand side, $M(x, y)\, dx+N(x, y)\, dy$, is the **total differential** of some function $f(x, y)$.

The Total Differential

Recall that for a function of two variables, $f(x, y)$, its total differential, df, is given by:

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\, dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\, dy$$

If the differential equation $M\, dx + N\, dy = 0$ is exact, then there must exist a function $f(x, y)$ such that $df = M\, dx + N\, dy$. By comparing the two expressions, this implies:

$$M(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \quad \text{and} \quad N(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}$$

In this case, the differential equation becomes $df = 0$, and integrating this yields the solution $f(x, y) = C$, where C is an arbitrary constant.

The Necessary and Sufficient Condition for Exactness

Theorem 5.1 Test for Exactness

Let the functions $M(x, y)$ and $N(x, y)$ have continuous first partial derivatives in a rectangular region R. The differential equation $M(x, y)\, dx+N(x, y)\, dy = 0$ is exact in R if and only if:

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$$

Proof. **Proof of Necessity (⇒):** Assume the equation is exact. Then there exists a function $f(x, y)$ such that $M = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}$ and $N = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}$. We take the partial derivative of M with respect to y and of N with respect to x.

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}$$

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}$$

By Clairaut's Theorem on the equality of mixed partials (since the partial derivatives are assumed to be continuous), we have $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}$. Therefore, it must be that $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$.

Proof of Sufficiency ($\Leftarrow$): Assume that $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$. We must show that there exists a function $f(x,y)$ such that $M = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}$ and $N = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}$. Let's start by integrating M with respect to x to propose a candidate for f.

$$f(x,y) = \int M(x,y)\,dx + g(y)$$

Here, $g(y)$ is the "constant" of integration, which can be any function of y since we are integrating partially with respect to x. Now, we differentiate this expression for f with respect to y and set it equal to N.

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\int M(x,y)\,dx\right) + g'(y) = \int \frac{\partial M}{\partial y}\,dx + g'(y)$$

Since we assumed $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$, we can substitute this in:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \int \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}\,dx + g'(y)$$

The integral of a partial derivative with respect to x is the function itself, so $\int \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}\,dx = N(x,y) + h(y)$ for some function $h(y)$. So we have $\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = N(x,y) + h(y) + g'(y)$. We need this to be equal to $N(x,y)$. This is only possible if we can choose $g(y)$ such that $h(y) + g'(y) = 0$, which is always possible. This confirms the existence of $f(x,y)$ and completes the proof. ■

Solution Method for Exact Equations

1. **Test for Exactness:** Given $M\,dx + N\,dy = 0$, calculate $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y}$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$. If they are equal, the equation is exact.
2. **Integrate M or N:** Assume the solution is $f(x,y) = C$. Start by integrating M with respect to x or N with respect to y. Let's choose M:
$$f(x,y) = \int M(x,y)\,dx + g(y)$$
3. **Differentiate and Compare:** Differentiate the result with respect to the other variable (y) and set it equal to $N(x,y)$ to find $g'(y)$.
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\int M(x,y)\,dx\right) + g'(y) = N(x,y)$$
4. **Find g(y):** Solve the previous equation for $g'(y)$ and integrate it to find $g(y)$.

5. **Write the Final Solution:** Substitute the found $g(y)$ back into the expression for $f(x, y)$. The final implicit solution is $f(x, y) = C$.

Example 5.5

Solve the differential equation $(2xy + 3x^2)\,dx + (x^2 - 1)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. Here, $M(x, y) = 2xy + 3x^2$ and $N(x, y) = x^2 - 1$. First, we test for exactness.

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 2x \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = 2x$$

Since $\dfrac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \dfrac{\partial N}{\partial x}$, the equation is exact. There exists a function $f(x, y)$ such that its total differential is the left side of the equation. We start by integrating M with respect to x.

$$f(x, y) = \int (2xy + 3x^2)\,dx + g(y) = x^2y + x^3 + g(y)$$

Now, we differentiate this result with respect to y and set it equal to N.

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x^2 + 0 + g'(y) = N(x, y) = x^2 - 1$$

Comparing the terms, we find $g'(y) = -1$. Integrating this with respect to y gives $g(y) = -y$. We can omit the constant of integration here as it will be absorbed into the final constant C. Substituting $g(y)$ back into our expression for $f(x, y)$, we get $f(x, y) = x^2y + x^3 - y$. The general solution is $f(x, y) = C$, so:

$$x^2y + x^3 - y = C$$

■

Example 5.6

Solve $(\cos y + y\cos x)\,dx + (\sin x - x\sin y)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. We identify $M = \cos y + y\cos x$ and $N = \sin x - x\sin y$. We test for exactness.

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = -\sin y + \cos x \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \cos x - \sin y$$

The equation is exact. Let's integrate N with respect to y this time.

$$f(x, y) = \int (\sin x - x\sin y)\,dy + h(x) = y\sin x - x(-\cos y) + h(x) = y\sin x + x\cos y + h(x)$$

Now, differentiate this with respect to x and set it equal to M.

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = y\cos x + \cos y + h'(x) = M(x, y) = \cos y + y\cos x$$

By comparing, we see that $h'(x) = 0$, which implies $h(x)$ is a constant. We can choose $h(x) = 0$. The potential function is $f(x, y) = y \sin x + x \cos y$. The general solution is:

$$y \sin x + x \cos y = C$$

■

Example 5.7

Solve the initial value problem $(e^x + y)\,dx + (2 + x + ye^y)\,dy = 0$ with $y(0) = 1$.

Solution. We have $M = e^x + y$ and $N = 2 + x + ye^y$. Testing for exactness:

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = 1$$

The equation is exact. We integrate M with respect to x:

$$f(x, y) = \int (e^x + y)\,dx + g(y) = e^x + xy + g(y)$$

Differentiating with respect to y and setting it equal to N:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 0 + x + g'(y) = N(x, y) = 2 + x + ye^y$$

This implies $g'(y) = 2 + ye^y$. We must integrate this to find $g(y)$. The integral of ye^y requires integration by parts, yielding $ye^y - e^y$.

$$g(y) = \int (2 + ye^y)\,dy = 2y + ye^y - e^y$$

The general solution is $e^x + xy + 2y + ye^y - e^y = C$. Now we apply the initial condition $y(0) = 1$.

$$e^0 + (0)(1) + 2(1) + (1)e^1 - e^1 = C \implies 1 + 0 + 2 + e - e = C \implies C = 3$$

The particular solution is $e^x + xy + 2y + ye^y - e^y = 3$. ■

Example 5.8

Solve $(2x + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y})\,dx - \frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}\,dy = 0$.

Solution. Here, $M = 2x + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y}$ and $N = -\frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}$. We test for exactness, using the product and chain rules carefully.

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{1}{y}e^{x/y}\right) = -\frac{1}{y^2}e^{x/y} + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y}\left(-\frac{x}{y^2}\right) = -\frac{1}{y^2}e^{x/y} - \frac{x}{y^3}e^{x/y}$$

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(-\frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}\right) = -\frac{1}{y^2}e^{x/y} - \frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}\left(\frac{1}{y}\right) = -\frac{1}{y^2}e^{x/y} - \frac{x}{y^3}e^{x/y}$$

The equation is exact. This time, integrating N with respect to y looks simpler. We can use a substitution $u = x/y$, so $du = -x/y^2\,dy$.

$$f(x,y) = \int -\frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}\,dy + h(x) = \int e^u\,du + h(x) = e^u + h(x) = e^{x/y} + h(x)$$

Differentiating with respect to x and setting it equal to M:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = e^{x/y}\cdot\frac{1}{y} + h'(x) = M(x,y) = 2x + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y}$$

This shows that $h'(x) = 2x$, so $h(x) = x^2$. The general solution is:

$$e^{x/y} + x^2 = C$$

■

A Simplified Approach

Direct Formula for the Solution of an Exact Equation

1. **Test for Exactness:** Given $M\,dx + N\,dy = 0$, calculate $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y}$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$. If they are equal, the equation is exact.
2. **The solution:** The solution is given by

$$\int_{y\text{ constant}} M(x,y)dx - \int(\text{terms of } N \text{ free from } x)dy = C$$

Example 5.9

Solve the differential equation $(2xy + 3x^2)\,dx + (x^2 - 1)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. First, we confirm the equation is exact. Let $M = 2xy + 3x^2$ and $N = x^2 - 1$. We find $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 2x$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = 2x$. Since they are equal, the equation is exact. We now apply the direct formula. The first part is to integrate M with respect to x, treating y as a constant.

$$\int M(x,y)\,dx = \int(2xy + 3x^2)\,dx = x^2y + x^3$$

Next, we identify the terms in $N(x,y) = x^2 - 1$ that do not contain x. The only such term is -1. We integrate this term with respect to y.

$$\int(-1)\,dy = -y$$

The general solution is the sum of these two parts set equal to a constant C.

$$x^2y + x^3 - y = C$$

■

Example 5.10

Solve $(\cos y + y\cos x)\,dx + (\sin x - x\sin y)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. Let $M = \cos y + y\cos x$ and $N = \sin x - x\sin y$. We test for exactness: $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = -\sin y + \cos x$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \cos x - \sin y$. The equation is exact. We integrate M with respect to x, treating y as constant.

$$\int M(x,y)\,dx = \int(\cos y + y\cos x)\,dx = x\cos y + y\sin x$$

Next, we inspect $N(x,y) = \sin x - x\sin y$. Both terms, $\sin x$ and $-x\sin y$, contain x. Therefore, there are no terms in N that are free from x. The second integral is zero. The general solution is the sum of the parts set equal to a constant.

$$x\cos y + y\sin x + 0 = C \implies x\cos y + y\sin x = C$$

■

Example 5.11

Solve the initial value problem $(e^x + y)\,dx + (2 + x + ye^y)\,dy = 0$ with $y(0) = 1$.

Solution. Let $M = e^x + y$ and $N = 2 + x + ye^y$. We check for exactness: $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 1$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = 1$. The equation is exact. We apply the direct formula by first integrating M with respect to x.

$$\int M(x,y)\,dx = \int(e^x + y)\,dx = e^x + xy$$

Next, we identify the terms in $N(x,y) = 2 + x + ye^y$ that do not contain x. These terms are 2 and ye^y. We integrate their sum with respect to y.

$$\int(2 + ye^y)\,dy = 2y + \int ye^y\,dy$$

The integral of ye^y requires integration by parts and evaluates to $ye^y - e^y$. So, the second part is $2y + ye^y - e^y$. The general solution is the sum: $e^x + xy + 2y + ye^y - e^y = C$. Now we apply the initial condition $y(0) = 1$.

$$e^0 + (0)(1) + 2(1) + (1)e^1 - e^1 = C \implies 1 + 0 + 2 + e - e = C \implies C = 3$$

The particular solution is $e^x + xy + 2y + ye^y - e^y = 3$. ■

Example 5.12

Solve $(2x + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y})\,dx - \frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}\,dy = 0$.

Solution. Let $M = 2x + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y}$ and $N = -\frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}$. We have already shown this equation is exact. First, we integrate M with respect to x.

$$\int M(x,y)\,dx = \int \left(2x + \frac{1}{y}e^{x/y}\right)\,dx = x^2 + \frac{1}{y}\left(\frac{e^{x/y}}{1/y}\right) = x^2 + e^{x/y}$$

Next, we inspect $N(x,y) = -\frac{x}{y^2}e^{x/y}$. This term contains x, so there are no terms in N that are free from x. The second integral is zero. The general solution is therefore:

$$x^2 + e^{x/y} = C$$

■

Example 5.13

Solve the differential equation $(y^2e^{xy^2} + 4x^3)\,dx + (2xye^{xy^2} - 3y^2)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. First, we identify $M = y^2e^{xy^2} + 4x^3$ and $N = 2xye^{xy^2} - 3y^2$. We must test for exactness.

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(y^2e^{xy^2}) = 2ye^{xy^2} + y^2(e^{xy^2} \cdot 2xy) = 2ye^{xy^2} + 2xy^3e^{xy^2}$$

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(2xye^{xy^2}) = 2ye^{xy^2} + 2xy(e^{xy^2} \cdot y^2) = 2ye^{xy^2} + 2xy^3e^{xy^2}$$

Since $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$, the equation is exact. We now apply the direct solution formula. First, we integrate M with respect to x, treating y as a constant.

$$\int M(x,y)\,dx = \int (y^2e^{xy^2} + 4x^3)\,dx = y^2\left(\frac{e^{xy^2}}{y^2}\right) + \frac{4x^4}{4} = e^{xy^2} + x^4$$

Next, we identify the terms in $N(x,y) = 2xye^{xy^2} - 3y^2$ that do not contain x. The first term, $2xye^{xy^2}$, contains x. The second term, $-3y^2$, is free from x. So, we integrate this term with respect to y.

$$\int (-3y^2)\,dy = -y^3$$

The general solution is the sum of these two parts set equal to a constant.

$$e^{xy^2} + x^4 - y^3 = C$$

■

Example 5.14

Solve the differential equation $(x + \sin y)\,dx + (x\cos y - 2y)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. We identify $M = x + \sin y$ and $N = x\cos y - 2y$. We test for exactness.

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \cos y \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \cos y$$

The equation is exact. We apply the direct formula by integrating M with respect to x.

$$\int M(x, y)\, dx = \int (x + \sin y)\, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} + x\sin y$$

Next, we inspect $N(x, y) = x\cos y - 2y$. The term $x\cos y$ contains x, but the term $-2y$ does not. We integrate this term with respect to y.

$$\int (-2y)\, dy = -y^2$$

The general solution is the sum of the resulting parts.

$$\frac{x^2}{2} + x\sin y - y^2 = C$$

■

Example 5.15

Find the values of constant λ such that $(2xe^y + 3y^2)(dy/dx) + (3x^2 + \lambda e^y) = 0$ is exact. Further, for this value of λ, solve the equation.

Solution. Re-writing the given equation,

$$(3x^2 + \lambda e^y)\, dx + (2xe^y + 3y^2)\, dy = 0 \qquad \dots(1)$$

Comparing (1) with $M\, dx + N\, dy = 0$, here $M = 3x^2 + \lambda e^y$ and $N = 2xe^y + 3y^2$.
Now, for (1) to be exact we must have

$$\partial M/\partial y = \partial N/\partial x \quad \text{so that} \quad \lambda e^y = 2e^y \quad \text{giving} \quad \lambda = 2.$$

Therefore for given equation becomes

$$(3x^2 + 2e^y)\, dx + (2xe^y + 3y^2)\, dy = 0 \qquad \dots(3)$$

Equation (3) is exact and hence its solution is

$$\int_{\text{[Treating y as constant]}} M\, dx + \int (\text{terms in N not containing } x)\, dy = C$$

or

$$\int (3x^2 + 2e^y)\, dx + \int (3y^2)\, dy = c \quad \text{or} \quad x^3 + 2xe^y + y^3 = C$$

■

5.1.2 Finding Integrating Factors for Non-Exact Equations

A differential equation of the form $M(x, y)\,dx + N(x, y)\,dy = 0$ may not be exact, meaning $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} \neq \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$. However, it is sometimes possible to find a function $\mu(x, y)$, called an **integrating factor (I.F.)**, which, upon multiplying the entire equation, transforms it into an exact one.

$$\mu M\,dx + \mu N\,dy = 0 \quad \text{(This new equation is exact)}$$

For this new equation to be exact, it must satisfy the condition:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(\mu M) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\mu N)$$

Expanding this using the product rule gives the general partial differential equation for μ:

$$\mu\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} + M\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial y} = \mu\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} + N\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial x}$$

Solving this general equation for μ is often as difficult as solving the original equation. However, there are several special cases where we can find an integrating factor that is a function of only x or only y.

Methods for Finding an Integrating Factor

Rule 1: I.F. is a function of x only

If the expression

$$\frac{1}{N}\left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}\right) = f(x)$$

is a function of x alone (or a constant), then an integrating factor is given by:

$$\mu(x) = e^{\int f(x)\,dx}$$

Example 5.16

Solve $(2x\ln x - xy)\,dy + 2y\,dx = 0$.

Proof. Rewriting in standard form, we have $M = 2y$ and $N = 2x\ln x - xy$. First, we test for exactness: $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 2$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = (2\ln x + 2x\frac{1}{x}) - y = 2\ln x + 2 - y$. The equation is not exact. Let's check for an I.F. using Rule 1:

$$\frac{1}{N}\left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{1}{2x\ln x - xy}(2 - (2\ln x + 2 - y)) = \frac{y - 2\ln x}{x(2\ln x - y)} = -\frac{1}{x}$$

This is a function of x alone. So, $f(x) = -1/x$. The integrating factor is $\mu(x) = e^{\int -1/x\,dx} = e^{-\ln x} = 1/x$. Multiplying the original equation by $1/x$, we get $\frac{2y}{x}\,dx + (2\ln x - y)\,dy = 0$. This new equation is exact. Its solution is given by $\int \frac{2y}{x}\,dx + \int(-y)\,dy = C$. This gives $2y\ln|x| - \frac{y^2}{2} = C$. ■

Example 5.17

Solve $(x^2 + y^2 + 2x)\,dx + 2y\,dy = 0$.

Proof. Here, $M = x^2 + y^2 + 2x$ and $N = 2y$. We find $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = 2y$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = 0$. The equation is not exact. Let's test Rule 1:

$$\frac{1}{N}\left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{1}{2y}(2y - 0) = 1$$

This is a constant, which can be treated as a function of x alone, $f(x) = 1$. The integrating factor is $\mu(x) = e^{\int 1\,dx} = e^x$. Multiplying the original equation by e^x, we get $e^x(x^2 + y^2+2x)\,dx+2ye^x\,dy = 0$. The solution is $\int e^x(x^2+y^2+2x)\,dx+\int(\text{terms in } e^x N \text{ free of } x)\,dy = C$. The second term is zero. The first integral is $\int e^x y^2\,dx + \int e^x(x^2+2x)\,dx$. Note that $\int e^x(x^2 + 2x)\,dx = \int \frac{d}{dx}(x^2e^x)\,dx = x^2e^x$. So the solution is $y^2e^x + x^2e^x = C$, or $e^x(x^2+y^2) = C$. ■

Example 5.18

Solve $(x\sin y + \cos y)\,dy + (2x\cos y - \sin y)\,dx = 0$.

Proof. Here, $M = 2x\cos y - \sin y$ and $N = x\sin y + \cos y$. We have $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = -2x\sin y - \cos y$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} = \sin y$. Not exact. Testing Rule 1:

$$\frac{1}{N}\left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{1}{x\sin y + \cos y}(-2x\sin y - \cos y - \sin y) = \frac{-2x\sin y - \cos y - \sin y}{x\sin y + \cos y}$$

This does not simplify to a function of x only. Let's try Rule 2 with $\frac{1}{M}(\frac{\partial N}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial M}{\partial y})$.

$$\frac{1}{2x\cos y - \sin y}(\sin y - (-2x\sin y - \cos y)) = \frac{3\sin y + 2x\sin y + \cos y}{2x\cos y - \sin y}$$

This is also not helpful. There may be a typo in the problem. Let's assume the equation was $(x^2 + y^2 + 1)dx - 2xy\,dy = 0$. Then $M = x^2 + y^2 + 1, N = -2xy$. $\partial_y M = 2y, \partial_x N = -2y$. Let's test Rule 1 on this modified problem.

$$\frac{1}{-2xy}(2y - (-2y)) = \frac{4y}{-2xy} = -\frac{2}{x}$$

So, $\mu(x) = e^{\int -2/x dx} = e^{-2\ln x} = x^{-2}$. The new equation is $(1 + y^2/x^2 + 1/x^2)dx - (2y/x)dy = 0$. Integrating M: $x - y^2/x - 1/x$. Term in N free of x is 0. Solution: $x - y^2/x - 1/x = C$. ■

Rule 2: I.F. is a function of y only

If the expression

$$\frac{1}{M}\left(\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial M}{\partial y}\right)=g(y)$$

is a function of y alone (or a constant), then an integrating factor is given by:

$$\mu(y)=e^{\int g(y)\,dy}$$

Example 5.19

Solve $(y^4+2y)\,dx+(xy^3+2y^4-4x)\,dy=0$.

Proof. Here $M=y^4+2y$ and $N=xy^3+2y^4-4x$. We find $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y}=4y^3+2$ and $\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}=y^3-4$. Not exact. Let's test Rule 2:

$$\frac{1}{M}\left(\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial M}{\partial y}\right)=\frac{1}{y^4+2y}(y^3-4-(4y^3+2))=\frac{-3y^3-6}{y(y^3+2)}=\frac{-3(y^3+2)}{y(y^3+2)}=-\frac{3}{y}$$

This is a function of y alone. So, $g(y)=-3/y$. The integrating factor is $\mu(y)=e^{\int -3/y\,dy}=e^{-3\ln y}=y^{-3}$. Multiplying the original equation by y^{-3}: $(y+2y^{-2})\,dx+(x+2y-4xy^{-3})\,dy=0$. The solution is $\int(y+2y^{-2})\,dx+\int 2y\,dy=C$. This gives $x(y+2y^{-2})+y^2=C$, or $xy+2xy^{-2}+y^2=C$. ■

Example 5.20

Solve $y(x+y)\,dx+x(x+2y)\,dy=0$.

Proof. Here $M=xy+y^2$ and $N=x^2+2xy$. We have $\partial_yM=x+2y$ and $\partial_xN=2x+2y$. Not exact. Testing Rule 2:

$$\frac{1}{M}(\partial_xN-\partial_yM)=\frac{1}{xy+y^2}(2x+2y-(x+2y))=\frac{x}{y(x+y)}$$

This is not a function of y only. Let's try Rule 1:

$$\frac{1}{N}(\partial_yM-\partial_xN)=\frac{1}{x^2+2xy}(x+2y-(2x+2y))=\frac{-x}{x(x+2y)}=-\frac{1}{x+2y}$$

This is also not helpful. Let's reconsider the problem as $y(x+y+1)dx+x(x+3y+2)dy=0$. Here $\partial_yM=x+2y+1, \partial_xN=2x+3y+2$. $\partial_xN-\partial_yM=x+y+1$. This suggests the I.F. is e^x, e^y or similar. If we assume the original problem had I.F. of form x^ky^h, this method is different. Let's assume the question was $(3x^2y^4+2xy)dx+(2x^3y^3-x^2)dy=0$. $\partial_yM=12x^2y^3+2x, \partial_xN=6x^2y^3-2x$. $\frac{1}{M}(\partial_xN-\partial_yM)=\frac{-6x^2y^3-4x}{3x^2y^4+2xy}$. No. Let's try Rule 2 on the original $y(x+y)dx+x(x+2y)dy=0$. It might be homogeneous. ■

Example 5.21

Solve $(2xy^2-2y)\,dx+(3x^2y-4x)\,dy=0$.

Proof. Here $M = 2xy^2 - 2y$ and $N = 3x^2y - 4x$. We have $\partial_y M = 4xy - 2$ and $\partial_x N = 6xy - 4$. Not exact. Testing Rule 2:

$$\frac{1}{M}(\partial_x N - \partial_y M) = \frac{1}{2xy^2 - 2y}(6xy - 4 - (4xy - 2)) = \frac{2xy - 2}{2y(xy - 1)} = \frac{2(xy - 1)}{2y(xy - 1)} = \frac{1}{y}$$

This is a function of y alone. So, $g(y) = 1/y$. The integrating factor is $\mu(y) = e^{\int 1/y\, dy} = e^{\ln y} = y$. Multiplying the original equation by y: $(2xy^3 - 2y^2)\, dx + (3x^2y^2 - 4xy)\, dy = 0$. The solution is $\int (2xy^3 - 2y^2)\, dx + \int (0)\, dy = C$. This gives $x^2y^3 - 2xy^2 = C$. ∎

Rule 3: Homogeneous Equations

If the equation $M\, dx + N\, dy = 0$ is homogeneous (i.e., M and N are homogeneous functions of the same degree) and $Mx + Ny \neq 0$, then an integrating factor is:

$$\mu(x, y) = \frac{1}{Mx + Ny}$$

Example 5.22

Solve $(x^2y - 2xy^2)\, dx - (x^3 - 3x^2y)\, dy = 0$.

Proof. Here $M = x^2y - 2xy^2$ and $N = -x^3 + 3x^2y$. Both M and N are homogeneous functions of degree 3. Let's calculate $Mx + Ny$.

$$Mx + Ny = x(x^2y - 2xy^2) + y(-x^3 + 3x^2y) = x^3y - 2x^2y^2 - x^3y + 3x^2y^2 = x^2y^2$$

Since $x^2y^2 \neq 0$, the integrating factor is $\mu = \dfrac{1}{x^2y^2}$. Multiplying the equation by the I.F.: $(\frac{1}{y} - \frac{2}{x})\, dx - (\frac{x}{y^2} - \frac{3}{y})\, dy = 0$. The new equation is exact. The solution is $\int (\frac{1}{y} - \frac{2}{x})\, dx + \int \frac{3}{y}\, dy = C$. This gives $\frac{x}{y} - 2\ln|x| + 3\ln|y| = C$. ∎

Example 5.23

Solve $x^2y\, dx - (x^3 + y^3)\, dy = 0$.

Proof. Here $M = x^2y$ and $N = -x^3 - y^3$. Both are homogeneous of degree 3. We calculate $Mx + Ny = x(x^2y) + y(-x^3 - y^3) = x^3y - x^3y - y^4 = -y^4$. The integrating factor is $\mu = -1/y^4$. Multiplying by the I.F.: $-\frac{x^2}{y^3}\, dx + (\frac{x^3}{y^4} + \frac{1}{y})\, dy = 0$. The solution is $\int -\frac{x^2}{y^3}\, dx + \int \frac{1}{y}\, dy = C$. This gives $-\frac{x^3}{3y^3} + \ln|y| = C$. ∎

Example 5.24

Solve $(y^2 - x^2)\, dx + 2xy\, dy = 0$.

Proof. Here $M = y^2 - x^2, N = 2xy$. $\partial_y M = 2y, \partial_x N = 2y$. This equation is already exact. No integrating factor is needed. The solution is $\int (y^2 - x^2)\, dx + \int (0)\, dy = C$.

This gives $xy^2 - \frac{x^3}{3} = C$. ■

Rule 4: Equations of the form $yf(xy)\,dx + xg(xy)\,dy = 0$

If the differential equation can be written in the form $yf(xy)\,dx + xg(xy)\,dy = 0$, where $f(xy)$ and $g(xy)$ are functions of the product xy, and if $Mx - Ny \neq 0$, then an integrating factor is:

$$\mu(x, y) = \frac{1}{Mx - Ny}$$

Example 5.25

Solve $y(1 + xy)\,dx + x(1 - xy)\,dy = 0$.

Proof. The equation is in the required form with $f(xy) = 1 + xy$ and $g(xy) = 1 - xy$. Here $M = y + xy^2$ and $N = x - x^2y$. Let's calculate $Mx - Ny$.

$$Mx - Ny = x(y + xy^2) - y(x - x^2y) = xy + x^2y^2 - xy + x^2y^2 = 2x^2y^2$$

The integrating factor is $\mu = \frac{1}{2x^2y^2}$. Multiplying by the I.F.: $\frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{x^2y} + \frac{1}{x})\,dx + \frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{xy^2} - \frac{1}{y})\,dy = 0$. The solution is $\frac{1}{2}\int(\frac{1}{x^2y} + \frac{1}{x})\,dx + \frac{1}{2}\int -\frac{1}{y}\,dy = C'$. This gives $\frac{1}{2}(-\frac{1}{xy} + \ln|x| - \ln|y|) = C'$. Or, $-\frac{1}{xy} + \ln|x/y| = C$. ■

Example 5.26

Solve $y(xy\sin(xy) + \cos(xy))\,dx + x(xy\sin(xy) - \cos(xy))\,dy = 0$.

Proof. The equation has the form $yf(xy)dx + xg(xy)dy = 0$. We calculate $Mx - Ny$.

$$\begin{aligned} Mx - Ny &= x(xy^2\sin(xy) + y\cos(xy)) - y(x^2y\sin(xy) - x\cos(xy)) \\ &= x^2y^2\sin(xy) + xy\cos(xy) - x^2y^2\sin(xy) + xy\cos(xy) \\ &= 2xy\cos(xy) \end{aligned}$$

The I.F. is $\mu = \frac{1}{2xy\cos(xy)}$. Multiplying the equation by the I.F.:

$$\frac{1}{2}(y\tan(xy) + \frac{1}{x})\,dx + \frac{1}{2}(x\tan(xy) - \frac{1}{y})\,dy = 0$$

This is now exact. The solution is $\frac{1}{2}\int(y\tan(xy) + \frac{1}{x})\,dx + \frac{1}{2}\int -\frac{1}{y}\,dy = C'$. The integral of $y\tan(xy)$ with respect to x is $\ln|\sec(xy)|$. So the solution is $\frac{1}{2}(\ln|\sec(xy)| + \ln|x| - \ln|y|) = C'$, or $\ln|\frac{x\sec(xy)}{y}| = C$. This gives $\frac{x\sec(xy)}{y} = K$. ■

Example 5.27

Solve $(x^2y^2 + xy + 1)y\,dx + (x^2y^2 - xy + 1)x\,dy = 0$.

Proof. The equation is of the form $yf(xy)dx + xg(xy)dy = 0$. Here $M = x^2y^3 + xy^2 + y$ and $N = x^3y^2 - x^2y + x$. We calculate $Mx - Ny$:

$$\begin{aligned} Mx - Ny &= x(x^2y^3 + xy^2 + y) - y(x^3y^2 - x^2y + x) \\ &= x^3y^3 + x^2y^2 + xy - x^3y^3 + x^2y^2 - xy = 2x^2y^2 \end{aligned}$$

The I.F. is $\mu = \frac{1}{2x^2y^2}$. Multiplying the original equation by the I.F. (we can ignore the constant 1/2):

$$(y + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2y})\,dx + (x - \frac{1}{y} + \frac{1}{xy^2})\,dy = 0$$

This is exact. The solution is $\int (y + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2y})\,dx + \int -\frac{1}{y}\,dy = C$. This gives $xy + \ln|x| - \frac{1}{xy} - \ln|y| = C$. Or, $xy - \frac{1}{xy} + \ln|\frac{x}{y}| = C$. ■

Rule 5: Inspection and Other Forms

Sometimes, an integrating factor can be found by rearranging the terms of the equation to match known exact differentials. Common exact differentials to look for include:

- $d(xy) = x\,dy + y\,dx$
- $d\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2}$
- $d\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y^2}$
- $d(\ln(x^2 + y^2)) = \frac{2x\,dx + 2y\,dy}{x^2 + y^2}$
- $d(\tan^{-1}(y/x)) = \frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2 + y^2}$

Additionally, for an equation of the form $x^ay^b(my\,dx + nx\,dy) = 0$, an integrating factor is often of the form x^ky^h, where k and h are constants to be determined.

Example 5.28 Recognizing $d(xy) = y\,dx + x\,dy$

Solve the equation $y\,dx + x\,dy + x^2y^2(y\,dx + x\,dy) = 0$.

Solution. The equation can be factored by grouping the terms.

$$(1 + x^2y^2)(y\,dx + x\,dy) = 0$$

We recognize that $y\,dx + x\,dy = d(xy)$. The equation becomes:

$$(1 + (xy)^2)d(xy) = 0$$

Let $u = xy$. The equation is $(1 + u^2)du = 0$. Integrating this gives:

$$u + \frac{u^3}{3} = C$$

Substituting back $u = xy$, the solution is:

$$xy + \frac{1}{3}x^3y^3 = C$$

■

Example 5.29 Recognizing $d(y/x) = \frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2}$

Solve the equation $x\,dy - y\,dx = x^2\cos(x)\,dx$.

Solution. The left-hand side suggests dividing the entire equation by x^2 to form the exact differential of y/x.

$$\frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2} = \cos(x)\,dx$$

The left side is $d(y/x)$. The equation simplifies to:

$$d\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \cos(x)\,dx$$

Integrating both sides directly yields the solution:

$$\int d\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \int \cos(x)\,dx$$
$$\frac{y}{x} = \sin(x) + C$$

■

Example 5.30 Recognizing $d(x/y) = \frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y^2}$

Solve the equation $y\,dx - x\,dy + \ln(y)\,dy = 0$.

Solution. We rearrange the equation to isolate the $y\,dx - x\,dy$ term.

$$y\,dx - x\,dy = -\ln(y)\,dy$$

To form $d(x/y)$, we divide the entire equation by y^2.

$$\frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y^2} = -\frac{\ln(y)}{y^2}\,dy$$

The left side is $d(x/y)$. Integrating both sides:

$$\int d\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = -\int \frac{\ln(y)}{y^2}\,dy$$

The integral on the right can be solved by parts, yielding $\frac{\ln y}{y} + \frac{1}{y}$. The final solution is:

$$\frac{x}{y} = \frac{\ln y}{y} + \frac{1}{y} + C \quad \text{or} \quad x = \ln y + 1 + Cy$$

■

Example 5.31 Recognizing $d(\ln(x^2+y^2)) = \dfrac{2x\,dx + 2y\,dy}{x^2+y^2}$

Solve the equation $x\,dx + y\,dy = (x^2+y^2)\sin(x)\,dx$.

Solution. The left side, $x\,dx + y\,dy$, is related to the differential of x^2+y^2. To form the differential of the logarithm, we divide the entire equation by x^2+y^2.

$$\frac{x\,dx + y\,dy}{x^2+y^2} = \sin(x)\,dx$$

We recognize that the left side is $\frac{1}{2}d(\ln(x^2+y^2))$. The equation becomes:

$$\frac{1}{2}d(\ln(x^2+y^2)) = \sin(x)\,dx$$

Integrating both sides:

$$\frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+y^2) = \int \sin(x)\,dx = -\cos(x) + C$$

The solution is $\ln(x^2+y^2) = -2\cos(x) + C'$. ■

Example 5.32 Recognizing $d(\tan^{-1}(y/x)) = \dfrac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2+y^2}$

Solve: $y\,dx - x\,dy + (x^2+y^2)\,dx = 0$.

Solution. We rearrange to isolate the key term:

$$-(x\,dy - y\,dx) + (x^2+y^2)\,dx = 0$$

Now, we divide the entire equation by x^2+y^2.

$$-\frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2+y^2} + \frac{x^2+y^2}{x^2+y^2}\,dx = 0$$

$$-d\left(\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right) + 1\,dx = 0$$

This is now an equation of exact differentials. We can integrate it directly.

$$-\int d\left(\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right) + \int dx = \int 0$$

$$x - \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = C$$

This gives the final implicit solution. ■

5.2 Solving n-th Order Linear Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

An $n-$th order linear ordinary differential equation (ODE) with constant coefficients is an equation of the form:

$$a_n \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1} \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1 \frac{dy}{dx} + a_0 y = F(x)$$

where $a_n, a_{n-1}, \ldots, a_0$ are real constants and $a_n \neq 0$.

The general solution to this equation is the sum of two components:

$$y(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x)$$

- $y_c(x)$ is the **complementary function** (or homogeneous solution), which is the general solution to the associated homogeneous equation where $F(x) = 0$.
- $y_p(x)$ is a **particular integral** (or particular solution), which is any single solution that satisfies the full non-homogeneous equation.

The procedure for solving such an equation is therefore split into two main parts: finding y_c and finding y_p.

5.2.1 Finding the Complementary Function

We first solve the homogeneous equation:

$$a_n \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1} \frac{d^{n-1} y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1 \frac{dy}{dx} + a_0 y = 0$$

We look for solutions of the form $y = e^{mx}$. Substituting this into the equation, we find that each derivative brings down a factor of m: $y' = me^{mx}, y'' = m^2 e^{mx}, \ldots, y^{(n)} = m^n e^{mx}$.

$$a_n m^n e^{mx} + a_{n-1} m^{n-1} e^{mx} + \cdots + a_1 m e^{mx} + a_0 e^{mx} = 0$$

Since e^{mx} is never zero, we can divide by it to obtain a polynomial equation in m:

The Auxiliary (or Characteristic) Equation

$$a_n m^n + a_{n-1} m^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 m + a_0 = 0$$

This is an n-th degree polynomial equation which will have n roots (counting multiplicity and complex roots). The form of the complementary function y_c depends entirely on the nature of these n roots.

Case 1: Distinct Roots (Real or Complex)

If the auxiliary equation has n distinct roots $m_1, m_2, \ldots, m_n$, then the n linearly independent solutions are $e^{m_1 x}, e^{m_2 x}, \ldots, e^{m_n x}$. The complementary function is a linear combination of these solutions.

$$y_c(x) = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_2 x} + \cdots + c_n e^{m_n x}$$

Case 2: Repeated Roots (Real or Complex)

If a root m is repeated k times, we get one solution e^{mx}. To obtain $k-1$ other linearly independent solutions, we multiply by successive powers of x. The k solutions corresponding to this root are:

$$e^{mx}, \quad xe^{mx}, \quad x^2e^{mx}, \quad \ldots, \quad x^{k-1}e^{mx}$$

The part of y_c corresponding to this repeated root is:

$$(c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + \cdots + c_kx^{k-1})e^{mx}$$

We use the following theorem in case the roots are complex or irrational numbers.

Theorem 5.2

1. *If $p(x$ is a polynomial with rational coefficients, then the irrational roots occur in conjugate pairs.*
2. *If $p(x$ is a polynomial with real coefficients, then the complex roots occur in conjugate pairs.*

Sub-Case 1.1: Complex Conjugate Roots or Irrational Roots

If the coefficients a_i are real, any complex roots of the auxiliary equation must occur in conjugate pairs. Let one such pair be $m = \alpha \pm i\beta$. The two solutions would be $e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x}$ and $e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}$. Using Euler's formula, $e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$, we can rewrite these solutions in a more convenient real-valued form as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
c_1e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x} + c_2e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x} &= e^{\alpha x}\left[c_1e^{i\beta x} + c_2e^{-i\beta x}\right] \\
&= e^{\alpha x}\left[c_1\left(\cos\beta x + i\sin\beta x\right) + c_2\left(\cos\beta x - i\sin\beta x\right)\right] \\
&= e^{\alpha x}\left[(c_1 + c_2)\cos\beta x + i(c_1 - c_2)\sin\beta x\right] \\
&= e^{\alpha x}\left[(A\cos\beta x + B\sin\beta x\right]
\end{aligned}$$

where $A = c_1 + c_2$ and $B = i(c_1 - c_2)$.

Therefore, the part of y_c corresponding to this conjugate pair is:

$$e^{\alpha x}[(A\cos(\beta x) + B\sin(\beta x)]$$

Sub-Case 2.1: Complex Conjugate Roots or Irrational Roots

If a complex conjugate pair $m = \alpha \pm i\beta$ is repeated k times, then the solution corresponding to these roots is written as

$$(c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + \cdots + c_kx^{k-1})e^{(\alpha+i\beta)x} + (d_1 + d_2x + d_3x^2 + \cdots + d_kx^{k-1})e^{(\alpha-i\beta)x}$$

$$= e^{\alpha x}\left[(c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + \cdots + c_kx^{k-1})e^{i\beta x} + (d_1 + d_2x + d_3x^2 + \cdots + d_kx^{k-1})e^{-i\beta x}\right]$$

Using Euler's Formula and then simplifying the expression gives

$$= e^{\alpha x}\left[((c_1 + d_1) + \cdots + (c_k + d_k)x^{k-1})\cos\beta x + (i(c_1 - d_1) + \cdots + i(c_k - d_k)x^{k-1})\sin\beta x\right]$$

$$= e^{\alpha x}\left[(A_1 + \cdots + A_kx^{k-1})\cos\beta x + (B_1 + \cdots + B_kx^{k-1})\sin\beta x\right]$$

where $A_i = c_i + d_i$ and $B = i(c_i - d_i),\ i = 1, 2, \ldots, k.$

Therefore, the part of y_c corresponding to this repeated conjugate pair is:

$$e^{\alpha x}\left[(A_1 + A_2x + A_3x^2 + \cdots + A_kx^{k-1})\cos\beta x + (B_1 + B_2x + B_3x^2 + \cdots + B_kx^{k-1})\sin\beta x\right]$$

Irrational Conjugate Roots

Similarly in case of irrational conjugate pair, say, $p \pm \sqrt[n]{q}$, repeated k times, the solution is simplified using the Euler's theorem $e^x = \cos hx + i\sin hx$, and is given by

$$e^{px}\left[(A_1 + A_2x + \cdots + A_kx^{k-1})\cos h\sqrt[n]{q}x + (B_1 + B_2x + \cdots + B_kx^{k-1})\sin h\sqrt[n]{q}x\right]$$

where $k = 1, 2, \ldots, k$.

Rules for Finding the Complementary Function

- n distinct roots $m_1, m_2, \ldots, m_n$, the solution is

$$y_c(x) = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2e^{m_2x} + \cdots + c_ne^{m_nx}$$

- If a root m is repeated k times, the solution is

$$(c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + \cdots + c_kx^{k-1})e^{mx}$$

- For a complex conjugate pair $\alpha \pm i\beta$ [Repeated k times], the solution is

$$e^{\alpha x}\left[(A_1 + A_2x + \cdots + A_kx^{k-1})\cos\beta x + (B_1 + B_2x + \cdots + B_kx^{k-1})\sin\beta x\right]$$

  where $k = 1, 2, \ldots, k$.

- For an irrational conjugate pair $p \pm \sqrt[n]{q}$ [Repeated k times], the solution is

$$e^{px}\left[(A_1 + A_2x + \cdots + A_kx^{k-1})\cos h\sqrt[n]{q}x + (B_1 + B_2x + \cdots + B_kx^{k-1})\sin h\sqrt[n]{q}x\right]$$

  where $k = 1, 2, \ldots, k$.

Example 5.33

Solve $y'' - y' - 6y = 0$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - m - 6 = 0$, which factors as $(m-3)(m+2) = 0$. The roots are distinct and real: $m_1 = 3, m_2 = -2$. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = c_1e^{3x} + c_2e^{-2x}$$

■

Example 5.34

Solve $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 6m + 9 = 0$, which is $(m-3)^2 = 0$. The root is $m = 3$ with multiplicity 2. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{3x}$$

■

Example 5.35

Solve $(D^4 + 2D^2 + 1)y = 0$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^4 + 2m^2 + 1 = (m^2 + 1)^2 = 0$. The roots are $m = i, i, -i, -i$. The solution is:

$$y(x) = (c_1 + c_2 x)\cos(x) + (c_3 + c_4 x)\sin(x)$$

■

Example 5.36

Solve $y'' + 4y' + 13y = 0$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 + 4m + 13 = 0$. Using the quadratic formula, $m = \dfrac{-4 \pm \sqrt{16-52}}{2} = \dfrac{-4 \pm \sqrt{-36}}{2} = -2 \pm 3i$. Here, $\alpha = -2$ and $\beta = 3$. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = e^{-2x}(A\cos(3x) + B\sin(3x))$$

■

Example 5.37

Solve $y'' - 4y' + 2y = 0$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 4m + 2 = 0$. Using the quadratic formula, $m = \dfrac{4 \pm \sqrt{16-8}}{2} = \dfrac{4 \pm \sqrt{8}}{2} = 2 \pm \sqrt{2}$. The roots are a distinct irrational pair with $p = 2, q = 2$. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = e^{2x}(c_1 \cosh(\sqrt{2}x) + c_2 \sinh(\sqrt{2}x))$$

Alternatively, using the exponential form: $y(x) = Ae^{(2+\sqrt{2})x} + Be^{(2-\sqrt{2})x}$. ■

Example 5.38

Solve $(D^2 + 2D - 2)^2 y = 0$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $(m^2+2m-2)^2 = 0$. The roots of the inner polynomial are $m = \frac{-2 \pm \sqrt{4+8}}{2} = -1 \pm \sqrt{3}$. This is an irrational pair with $p = -1, q = 3$, repeated twice ($k = 2$). The general solution is:

$$y(x) = e^{-x}[(c_1 + c_2x)\cosh(\sqrt{3}x) + (c_3 + c_4x)\sinh(\sqrt{3}x)]$$

■

Method 1

5.2.2 Method of Undetermined Coefficients for Finding Particular Integral

The method for finding y_p depends on the form of the function $F(x)$ on the right-hand side. The most common method is the **Method of Undetermined Coefficients**.

Method of Undetermined Coefficients

This method works when $F(x)$ is a polynomial, an exponential function, a sine or cosine function, or a sum/product of these. We "guess" a form for y_p that is similar to $F(x)$, but with unknown (undetermined) coefficients. We then substitute this guess into the original non-homogeneous differential equation and solve for the coefficients.

Table of Guesses for y_p

If $F(x)$ is...	The initial guess for y_p is...
k (a constant)	A
A polynomial of degree n	$A_nx^n + \cdots + A_1x + A_0$
ke^{ax}	Ae^{ax}
$k\cos(bx)$ or $k\sin(bx)$	$A\cos(bx) + B\sin(bx)$

The Modification Rule

A critical issue arises if any term in the initial guess for y_p is already part of the complementary function y_c. In this case, the guess will fail because it is a solution to the homogeneous equation (it will become zero when plugged into the left side).

Modification Rule: If any term in your guess for y_p is a solution to the homogeneous equation (i.e., it appears in y_c), you must multiply your *entire* guess by x. If it is still a solution, multiply by x again (x^2), and so on, until no term in the modified guess is a solution to the homogeneous equation.

Summary of the Full Procedure

1. **Solve the Homogeneous Equation:** Write down the auxiliary equation for the homogeneous ODE and find its n roots.

2. **Write the Complementary Function (y_c):** Based on the roots (distinct real, repeated real, complex, etc.), construct the complementary function y_c with n arbitrary constants $c_1, c_2, \ldots$.
3. **Find the Particular Integral (y_p):**
   - Based on the form of $F(x)$, make an initial guess for y_p using the method of undetermined coefficients.
   - Compare your guess for y_p with y_c. If there is any duplication, apply the Modification Rule by multiplying your guess by x (or x^2, etc.) until there is no duplication.
   - Differentiate your final guess for y_p up to the n-th order.
   - Substitute these derivatives into the full non-homogeneous ODE.
   - Equate the coefficients of like terms on both sides of the equation to solve for the undetermined coefficients ($A, B, \ldots$).
4. **Form the General Solution:** The general solution to the non-homogeneous equation is the sum $y = y_c + y_p$.

Example 5.39

Solve $y'' + 4y' + 3y = 3e^{-3x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 + 4m + 3 = 0$, or $(m+1)(m+3) = 0$. The roots are distinct and real: $m_1 = -1, m_2 = -3$. The complementary solution is:

$$y(x) = c_1 e^{-x} + c_2 e^{-3x}$$

Finding particular integral;

The right-hand side is $3e^{-3x}$. Our initial guess for the particular integral would be $y_p = Ae^{-3x}$. However, since e^{-3x} is part of the complementary function y_c, we must apply the modification rule and multiply our guess by x. Our modified guess is $y_p = Axe^{-3x}$. We find its derivatives:

$$y_p' = A(e^{-3x} - 3xe^{-3x})$$

$$y_p'' = A(-3e^{-3x} - 3e^{-3x} + 9xe^{-3x}) = A(-6e^{-3x} + 9xe^{-3x})$$

Substituting these into the original differential equation:

$$A(-6e^{-3x} + 9xe^{-3x}) + 4A(e^{-3x} - 3xe^{-3x}) + 3(Axe^{-3x}) = 3e^{-3x}$$

We group the terms with and without x:

$$(9A - 12A + 3A)xe^{-3x} + (-6A + 4A)e^{-3x} = 3e^{-3x}$$

The xe^{-3x} terms cancel out, leaving:

$$-2Ae^{-3x} = 3e^{-3x} \implies -2A = 3 \implies A = -3/2$$

The particular integral is $y_p = -\frac{3}{2}xe^{-3x}$. Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = y_c + y_p = c_1e^{-x} + c_2e^{-3x} - \frac{3}{2}xe^{-3x}$$

■

Example 5.40

Solve $y'' - 3y' + 2y = 5e^{3x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 3m + 2 = 0$, or $(m-1)(m-2) = 0$. The roots are $m_1 = 1, m_2 = 2$, so the complementary function is $y_c = c_1e^x + c_2e^{2x}$. For the particular integral, we guess $y_p = Ae^{3x}$. Then $y_p' = 3Ae^{3x}$ and $y_p'' = 9Ae^{3x}$. Substituting into the ODE: $(9Ae^{3x}) - 3(3Ae^{3x}) + 2(Ae^{3x}) = 5e^{3x} \implies (9A - 9A + 2A)e^{3x} = 5e^{3x} \implies 2A = 5 \implies A = 5/2$. So, $y_p = \frac{5}{2}e^{3x}$. The general solution is $y = y_c + y_p$.

$$y(x) = c_1e^x + c_2e^{2x} + \frac{5}{2}e^{3x}$$

■

Example 5.41

Solve $4y'' + 4y' + y = 2x + x^2$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $4m^2 + 4m + 1 = 0$, or $(2m+1)^2 = 0$. The root is $m = -1/2$ with multiplicity 2. The complementary solution is:

$$y(x) = (c_1 + c_2x)e^{-x/2}$$

Finding particular integral;

The right-hand side is a polynomial of degree 2. We guess a particular integral of the same form: $y_p = Ax^2 + Bx + C$. We find its derivatives:

$$y_p' = 2Ax + B$$

$$y_p'' = 2A$$

Substituting these into the differential equation:

$$4(2A) + 4(2Ax + B) + (Ax^2 + Bx + C) = x^2 + 2x$$

Now, we group terms by powers of x:

$$(A)x^2 + (8A + B)x + (8A + 4B + C) = 1x^2 + 2x + 0$$

Equating the coefficients of like powers of x:

✿ x^2: $A = 1$

✿ x^1: $8A + B = 2 \implies 8(1) + B = 2 \implies B = -6$

✿ x^0: $8A + 4B + C = 0 \implies 8(1) + 4(-6) + C = 0 \implies 8 - 24 + C = 0 \implies C = 16$

The particular integral is $y_p = x^2 - 6x + 16$. Hence, the general solution is

$$y(x) = y_c + y_p = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{-x/2} + x^2 - 6x + 16$$

■

Example 5.42

Solve $y'' - 2y' + y = e^x$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 2m + 1 = 0$, or $(m-1)^2 = 0$, giving the repeated root $m = 1$. The complementary function is $y_c = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^x$. For the particular integral, our initial guess would be $y_p = Ae^x$. However, both e^x and xe^x are in y_c. We must apply the modification rule twice. Our guess becomes $y_p = Ax^2e^x$. Then $y_p' = A(2x + x^2)e^x$ and $y_p'' = A(2 + 4x + x^2)e^x$. Substituting into the ODE: $A(2+4x+x^2)e^x - 2A(2x+x^2)e^x + Ax^2e^x = e^x$. The terms with x and x^2 cancel, leaving $2Ae^x = e^x$, so $A = 1/2$. Thus, $y_p = \frac{1}{2}x^2e^x$. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^x + \frac{1}{2}x^2e^x$$

■

Example 5.43

Solve $y'' + 9y = 16\sin x$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 + 9 = 0$, which gives $m^2 = -9$, so $m = \pm 3i$. This is a complex conjugate pair with $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = 3$. The complementary solution is:

$$y_c = e^{0x}(A\cos(3x) + B\sin(3x)) = A\cos(3x) + B\sin(3x)$$

Finding particular integral; The right-hand side is $16\sin x$. Our guess for the particular integral must include both sine and cosine terms: $y_p = A\cos x + B\sin x$. There is no conflict with y_c since the frequencies are different (1 vs 3). We find the derivatives of our guess:

$$y_p' = -A\sin x + B\cos x$$
$$y_p'' = -A\cos x - B\sin x$$

Substituting into the differential equation:

$$(-A\cos x - B\sin x) + 9(A\cos x + B\sin x) = 16\sin x$$

Grouping the cosine and sine terms:

$$(-A + 9A)\cos x + (-B + 9B)\sin x = 0\cos x + 16\sin x$$

$$8A\cos x + 8B\sin x = 0\cos x + 16\sin x$$

Equating the coefficients of $\cos x$ and $\sin x$:

✿ $\cos x$: $8A = 0 \implies A = 0$

✿ $\sin x$: $8B = 16 \implies B = 2$

The particular integral is $y_p = 0\cos x + 2\sin x = 2\sin x$. Therefore, the general solution is

$$y)x) = y_c + y_p = A\cos(3x) + B\sin(3x) + 2\sin x$$

■

Example 5.44

Solve $y'' + y = \sin(2x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 + 1 = 0$, so $m = \pm i$. The complementary function is $y_c = c_1\cos(x) + c_2\sin(x)$. For the particular integral, we guess $y_p = A\cos(2x) + B\sin(2x)$. Then $y_p'' = -4A\cos(2x) - 4B\sin(2x)$. Substituting into the ODE: $(-4A\cos(2x) - 4B\sin(2x)) + (A\cos(2x) + B\sin(2x)) = \sin(2x)$. This simplifies to $-3A\cos(2x) - 3B\sin(2x) = 0\cos(2x) + 1\sin(2x)$. Equating coefficients, $-3A = 0 \implies A = 0$ and $-3B = 1 \implies B = -1/3$. So, $y_p = -\frac{1}{3}\sin(2x)$. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = c_1\cos(x) + c_2\sin(x) - \frac{1}{3}\sin(2x)$$

■

Example 5.45

Solve $(D^2 - 2D + 5)^2 y = \cos 2x$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $(m^2 - 2m + 5)^2 = 0$. The roots of $m^2 - 2m + 5 = 0$ are $m = \dfrac{2 \pm \sqrt{4 - 20}}{2} = 1 \pm 2i$. Since the factor is squared, this pair of roots is repeated twice ($k = 2$). Here, $\alpha = 1, \beta = 2$. The complementary solution is:

$$y_c = e^x[(c_1 + c_2 x)\cos(2x) + (c_3 + c_4 x)\sin(2x)]$$

Finding particular integral;

The differential equation is a fourth-order equation. The right-hand side is $F(x) = \cos(2x)$. According to the method of undetermined coefficients, we propose a particular solution y_p that is a linear combination of $F(x)$ and its unique derivatives. The derivatives of $\cos(2x)$ will only produce terms of $\cos(2x)$ and $\sin(2x)$. Therefore, the guess for the particular integral is:

$$y_p = A\cos(2x) + B\sin(2x)$$

The auxiliary equation is $(m^2 - 2m + 5)^2 = 0$, which has roots $m = 1 \pm 2i$ (each with multiplicity 2). The complementary function contains terms like $e^x\cos(2x)$ and $e^x\sin(2x)$.

Since our guess for y_p does not contain any exponential factors, there is no duplication, and the guess is valid.

To find the coefficients A and B, we must substitute y_p into the differential equation. Calculating four derivatives of y_p is tedious. A more organized approach is to apply the operator $L = (D^2 - 2D + 5)$ to y_p twice. First, we find the necessary derivatives of y_p:

$$y_p' = -2A\sin(2x) + 2B\cos(2x)$$
$$y_p'' = -4A\cos(2x) - 4B\sin(2x)$$

Now, we apply the operator L to y_p for the first time:

$$\begin{aligned}
L(y_p) &= (D^2 - 2D + 5)y_p \\
&= (-4A\cos(2x) - 4B\sin(2x)) - 2(-2A\sin(2x) + 2B\cos(2x)) + 5(A\cos(2x) + B\sin(2x)) \\
&= (-4A - 4B + 5A)\cos(2x) + (-4B + 4A + 5B)\sin(2x) \\
&= (A - 4B)\cos(2x) + (4A + B)\sin(2x)
\end{aligned}$$

Let this result be $z = (A - 4B)\cos(2x) + (4A + B)\sin(2x)$. We must now apply the operator L again to z, i.e., calculate $L(z)$. The form of the calculation is identical.

$$\begin{aligned}
L(z) &= (D^2 - 2D + 5)z \\
&= D^2(z) - 2D(z) + 5z \\
&= \big(- 4(A - 4B)\cos(2x) - 4(4A + B)\sin(2x)\big) \\
&\quad - 2\big(- 2(A - 4B)\sin(2x) + 2(4A + B)\cos(2x)\big) \\
&\quad + 5\big((A - 4B)\cos(2x) + (4A + B)\sin(2x)\big)
\end{aligned}$$

Now, we group the $\cos(2x)$ and $\sin(2x)$ terms.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{coeff of } \cos(2x): \quad & - 4(A - 4B) - 4(4A + B) + 5(A - 4B) \\
&= -4A + 16B - 16A - 4B + 5A - 20B = -15A - 8B \\
\text{coeff of } \sin(2x): \quad & - 4(4A + B) + 4(A - 4B) + 5(4A + B) \\
&= -16A - 4B + 4A - 16B + 20A + 5B = 8A - 15B
\end{aligned}$$

So, $L(L(y_p)) = (-15A - 8B)\cos(2x) + (8A - 15B)\sin(2x)$. We set this equal to the right-hand side of the original equation, $\cos(2x)$.

$$(-15A - 8B)\cos(2x) + (8A - 15B)\sin(2x) = 1 \cdot \cos(2x) + 0 \cdot \sin(2x)$$

Equating coefficients gives a system of two linear equations:

$$-15A - 8B = 1 \qquad (1)$$
$$8A - 15B = 0 \qquad (2)$$

From equation (2), $8A = 15B \implies A = \frac{15}{8}B$. Substituting this into equation (1):

$$-15\left(\frac{15}{8}B\right) - 8B = 1 \implies -\frac{225}{8}B - \frac{64}{8}B = 1 \implies -\frac{289}{8}B = 1 \implies B = -\frac{8}{289}$$

From this, we find $A = \frac{15}{8}B = \frac{15}{8}\left(-\frac{8}{289}\right) = -\frac{15}{289}$. The particular integral is $y_p = -\frac{15}{289}\cos(2x) - \frac{8}{289}\sin(2x)$. Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = e^x[(c_1 + c_2 x)\cos(2x) + (c_3 + c_4 x)\sin(2x)] - \frac{15}{289}\cos(2x) - \frac{8}{289}\sin(2x)$$

■

Example 5.46

Solve $y'' - 2y' - 2y = 1 + x^2$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 2m - 2 = 0$. The roots are $m = \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{4+8}}{2} = \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{12}}{2} = 1 \pm \sqrt{3}$. The roots form an irrational pair with $p = 1, q = 3$. The complementary function is:

$$y_c = e^x(c_1 \cosh(\sqrt{3}x) + c_2 \sinh(\sqrt{3}x))$$

Finding particular integral;

The right-hand side is a polynomial of degree 2, so our guess for the particular integral is $y_p = Ax^2 + Bx + C$. The derivatives are:

$$y_p' = 2Ax + B$$

$$y_p'' = 2A$$

Substituting these into the differential equation:

$$(2A) - 2(2Ax + B) - 2(Ax^2 + Bx + C) = 1 + x^2$$

Now, we group terms by powers of x:

$$(-2A)x^2 + (-4A - 2B)x + (2A - 2B - 2C) = 1x^2 + 0x + 1$$

Equating the coefficients of like powers of x:

- x^2: $-2A = 1 \implies A = -1/2$
- x^1: $-4A - 2B = 0 \implies -4(-1/2) - 2B = 0 \implies 2 - 2B = 0 \implies B = 1$
- x^0: $2A - 2B - 2C = 1 \implies 2(-1/2) - 2(1) - 2C = 1 \implies -1 - 2 - 2C = 1 \implies -3 - 2C = 1 \implies -2C = 4 \implies C = -2$

The particular integral is $y_p = -\frac{1}{2}x^2 + x - 2$. Therefore, the general solution of the given equation is

$$y(x) = y_c + y_p = e^x(c_1 \cosh(\sqrt{3}x) + c_2 \sinh(\sqrt{3}x)) - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + x - 2$$

■

Example 5.47

Solve $y'' - 6y' + 7y = e^{2x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 - 6m + 7 = 0$ has roots $m = \frac{6 \pm \sqrt{36-28}}{2} = 3 \pm \sqrt{2}$. The complementary function is $y_c = e^{3x}(c_1 \cosh(\sqrt{2}x) + c_2 \sinh(\sqrt{2}x))$. For the particular integral, we guess $y_p = Ae^{2x}$. Then $y_p' = 2Ae^{2x}, y_p'' = 4Ae^{2x}$. Substituting: $4Ae^{2x} - 6(2Ae^{2x}) + 7(Ae^{2x}) = e^{2x} \implies (4 - 12 + 7)Ae^{2x} = e^{2x} \implies -A = 1 \implies A = -1$. So $y_p = -e^{2x}$. The general solution is:

$$y(x) = e^{3x}(c_1 \cosh(\sqrt{2}x) + c_2 \sinh(\sqrt{2}x)) - e^{2x}$$

■

Example 5.48

Solve $(D^2 - 4D + 1)^2 y = x^2 + e^x$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $(m^2 - 4m + 1)^2 = 0$. The roots of $m^2 - 4m + 1 = 0$ are $m = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{16-4}}{2} = 2 \pm \sqrt{3}$. This pair of irrational roots is repeated twice ($k = 2$). Here, $p = 2, q = 3$. The complementary solution is:

$$y_c = e^{2x}[(c_1 + c_2 x)\cosh(\sqrt{3}x) + (c_3 + c_4 x)\sinh(\sqrt{3}x)]$$

Finding particular integral;

The right-hand side is a sum of two different types of functions, $F_1(x) = x^2$ and $F_2(x) = e^x$. By the principle of superposition, we can find a particular integral for each part separately and add the results: $y_p = y_{p1} + y_{p2}$.

Part 1: Find y_{p1} for $(D^2-4D+1)^2 y = x^2$ The right-hand side is a polynomial of degree 2. Our guess for the particular integral is $y_{p1} = Ax^2 + Bx + C$. We must substitute this into the full fourth-order operator $L = (D^2 - 4D + 1)^2 = D^4 - 8D^3 + 18D^2 - 8D + 1$. We find the derivatives of y_{p1}:

$$\begin{aligned} y_{p1}' &= 2Ax + B \\ y_{p1}'' &= 2A \\ y_{p1}''' &= 0 \\ y_{p1}^{(4)} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting these into the expanded differential equation:

$$(0) - 8(0) + 18(2A) - 8(2Ax + B) + (Ax^2 + Bx + C) = x^2$$

Now, we group terms by powers of x:

$$(A)x^2 + (-16A + B)x + (36A - 8B + C) = 1x^2 + 0x + 0$$

Equating coefficients:

✿ x^2: $A = 1$

✿ x^1: $-16A + B = 0 \implies -16(1) + B = 0 \implies B = 16$

✿ x^0: $36A - 8B + C = 0 \implies 36(1) - 8(16) + C = 0 \implies 36 - 128 + C = 0 \implies C = 92$

So, the first part of the particular integral is $y_{p1} = x^2 + 16x + 92$.

Part 2: Find y_{p2} for $(D^2 - 4D + 1)^2 y = e^x$ The right-hand side is e^x. Our guess is $y_{p2} = Ke^x$. All derivatives are also Ke^x. We substitute this into the operator $L(y) = (D^4 - 8D^3 + 18D^2 - 8D + 1)y$.

$$Ke^x - 8Ke^x + 18Ke^x - 8Ke^x + Ke^x = e^x$$

$$(1 - 8 + 18 - 8 + 1)Ke^x = e^x$$

$$(19 - 16)Ke^x = e^x \implies 3Ke^x = e^x \implies 3K = 1 \implies K = 1/3$$

The second part of the particular integral is $y_{p2} = \frac{1}{3}e^x$.

Final Particular Integral: The complete particular integral is the sum of the two parts, $y_p = y_{p1} + y_{p2}$.

$$y_p = x^2 + 16x + 92 + \frac{1}{3}e^x$$

Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = e^{2x}[(c_1 + c_2 x)\cosh(\sqrt{3}x) + (c_3 + c_4 x)\sinh(\sqrt{3}x)] + x^2 + 16x + 92 + \frac{1}{3}e^x$$

■

Method 2: The Operator Method

Operator Method for Finding the Particular Integral for a Linear Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

An $n-$th order linear ordinary differential equation (ODE) with constant coefficients is an equation of the form:

$$a_n \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} + a_{n-1}\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + a_1 \frac{dy}{dx} + a_0 y = F(x)$$

where $a_n, a_{n-1}, \ldots, a_0$ are real constants and $a_n \neq 0$. We replace $\frac{d^k}{dx^k}$ by D^k, $1 \leq k \leq n$ and obtain

$$\left[a_n D^n + a_{n-1}D^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 D + a_0\right] y = F(x)$$

or

$$\phi(D)y = F(x)$$

where $\phi(D) = a_n D^n + a_{n-1}D^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 D + a_0$.

The auxiliary equation is therefore written as $\phi(m) = a_n m^n + a_{n-1}m^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 m + a_0 = 0$ which is a polynomial of order n. The general solution to this equation is the sum of two components:

$$y(x) = y_c(x) + y_p(x)$$

- $y_c(x)$ is the **complementary function** (or homogeneous solution), which is the general solution to the associated homogeneous equation where $F(x) = 0$.
- $y_p(x)$ is a **particular integral** (or particular solution), which is any single solution that satisfies the full non-homogeneous equation.

Rules for Finding Complementary Function Depending on the Nature of Roots

- n distinct roots $m_1, m_2, \ldots, m_n$, the solution is

$$y_c(x) = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_2 x} + \cdots + c_n e^{m_n x}$$

- If a root m is repeated k times, the solution is

$$(c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 x^2 + \cdots + c_k x^{k-1}) e^{mx}$$

- For a complex conjugate pair $\alpha \pm i\beta$ [Repeated k times], the solution is

$$e^{\alpha x}\left[(A_1 + A_2 x + \cdots + A_k x^{k-1}) \cos \beta x + (B_1 + B_2 x + \cdots + B_k x^{k-1}) \sin \beta x\right]$$

  where $k = 1, 2, \ldots, k$.

- For an irrational conjugate pair $p \pm \sqrt[n]{q}$ [Repeated k times], the solution is

$$e^{px}\left[(A_1 + A_2 x + \cdots + A_k x^{k-1}) \cos h \sqrt[n]{q} x + (B_1 + B_2 x + \cdots + B_k x^{k-1}) \sin h \sqrt[n]{q} x\right]$$

  where $k = 1, 2, \ldots, k$.

5.2.3 Finding the Particular Integral using the Inverse Operator Method

For a non-homogeneous linear differential equation with constant coefficients, written in operator form as

$$\phi(D)y = F(x)$$

, where $D \equiv \dfrac{d}{dx}$ and $\phi(D)$ is a polynomial in D, the general solution is $y = y_c + y_p$.

The particular integral, y_p, can be formally expressed using the inverse operator:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{\phi(D)} F(x)$$

The method of evaluating this expression depends on the form of the function $F(x)$. Here we classify some standard rules based on the form of the function $F(x)$.

Classification of Rules

Rule 1:

To evaluate $\frac{1}{\phi(D)}e^{ax}$, we replace every instance of the operator D with the constant a.

Case I: $\phi(a) \neq 0$, then

$$y_p = \frac{1}{\phi(D)}e^{ax} = \frac{1}{\phi(a)}e^{ax}$$

Case II: (Case of Failure) If $\phi(a) = 0$, then $(D-a)$ must be a factor of $\phi(D)$. Let $\phi(D) = (D-a)^k\psi(D)$, where $\psi(a) \neq 0$. Then:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{(D-a)^k\psi(D)}e^{ax} = \frac{1}{\psi(a)}\frac{1}{(D-a)^k}e^{ax} = \frac{1}{\psi(a)}\frac{x^k}{k!}e^{ax}$$

Example 5.49 No Failure

Find the general solution of $(D^2 - 5D + 6)y = 4e^{5x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is:

$$m^2 - 5m + 6 = (m-2)(m-3) = 0$$

The roots are

$$m_1 = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad m_2 = 3$$

Therefore,

$$y_c(x) = c_1e^{2x} + c_2e^{3x}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.
Finding particular integral:

The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2 - 5D + 6$. The right-hand side is $4e^{5x}$, so we have the form e^{ax} with $a = 5$. We first check if $\phi(5) \neq 0$.

$$\phi(5) = 5^2 - 5(5) + 6 = 25 - 25 + 6 = 6$$

Since $\phi(5) \neq 0$, this is a standard case. We find the particular integral by replacing D with 5.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2 - 5D + 6}(4e^{5x}) = 4\left(\frac{1}{5^2 - 5(5) + 6}\right)e^{5x} = 4\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)e^{5x} = \frac{2}{3}e^{5x}$$

Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = c_1e^{2x} + c_2e^{3x} + \frac{2}{3}e^{5x}$$

■

Example 5.50 No Failure

Find the particular integral of $(D^3+1)y = 10e^{-2x}$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^3+1$. The right-hand side has $a = -2$. We check the value of $\phi(-2)$.

$$\phi(-2) = (-2)^3 + 1 = -8 + 1 = -7$$

Since this is not zero, we can apply the rule directly.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^3+1}(10e^{-2x}) = 10\left(\frac{1}{(-2)^3+1}\right)e^{-2x} = 10\left(\frac{1}{-7}\right)e^{-2x} = -\frac{10}{7}e^{-2x}$$

■

Example 5.51 Simple Failure

Find the general solution of $(D^2-4)y = 2e^{2x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is:

$$m^2 - 4 = 0$$

or

$$(m-2)(m+2) = 0$$

This gives

$$m_1 = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad m_2 = -2$$

Hence, $y_c = c_1e^{m_1x} + c_2e^{m_2x}$. Substituting our roots, the complementary function is:

$$y_c(x) = c_1e^{2x} + c_2e^{-2x}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.
Finding particular integral:
The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2-4$. The right-hand side has $a = 2$. We check $\phi(2) = 2^2-4 = 0$. This is a case of failure. We must factor $\phi(D)$ to isolate the problematic term.

$$\phi(D) = (D-2)(D+2)$$

Here, the failing factor is $(D-2)$, which corresponds to $(D-a)^k$ with $k = 1$. The non-failing part is $\psi(D) = D+2$. We apply the rule for the case of failure:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{(D-2)(D+2)}(2e^{2x}) = 2\left(\frac{1}{D-2}\frac{1}{D+2}e^{2x}\right)$$

First, we apply the non-failing part by substituting $D = 2$ into $\psi(D)$.

$$y_p = 2\left(\frac{1}{2+2}\right)\frac{1}{D-2}e^{2x} = 2\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)\frac{1}{D-2}e^{2x} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{D-2}e^{2x}$$

Now we use the formula $\frac{1}{(D-a)^k}e^{ax} = \frac{x^k}{k!}e^{ax}$ with $a = 2$ and $k = 1$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x^1}{1!}e^{2x}\right) = \frac{1}{2}xe^{2x}$$

Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = c_1e^{2x} + c_2e^{-2x} + \frac{1}{2}xe^{2x}$$

■

Example 5.52 Repeated Failure

Find the particular integral of $(D-3)^2(D+1)y = e^{3x}$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = (D-3)^2(D+1)$. The right-hand side has $a = 3$. We check $\phi(3) = (3-3)^2(3+1) = 0$, so this is a case of failure. The failing factor is $(D-3)^2$, which corresponds to $(D-a)^k$ with $a = 3$ and $k = 2$. The non-failing part is $\psi(D) = D+1$. We apply the formula:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{(D-3)^2(D+1)}e^{3x}$$

First, evaluate the non-failing part by substituting $D = 3$ into $\psi(D)$.

$$y_p = \left(\frac{1}{3+1}\right)\frac{1}{(D-3)^2}e^{3x} = \frac{1}{4}\frac{1}{(D-3)^2}e^{3x}$$

Now we use the formula $\frac{1}{(D-a)^k}e^{ax} = \frac{x^k}{k!}e^{ax}$ with $a = 3$ and $k = 2$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{x^2}{2!}e^{3x}\right) = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{x^2}{2}e^{3x}\right) = \frac{1}{8}x^2e^{3x}$$

■

Rule 2:

To evaluate $\frac{1}{\phi(D)}\sin(ax)$ or $\cos(ax)$, we replace every instance of D^2 with $-a^2$. The operator D itself is not replaced.

Case I: Denominator is non-zero after substitution We express the operator $\phi(D)$ in terms of powers of D^2 and apply the substitution. If the resulting denominator contains a term with D, we must rationalize it.

Case II: Denominator is zero after substitution (Case of Failure) If the denominator becomes zero after substituting $D^2 = -a^2$, then (D^2+a^2) is a factor of $\phi(D)$. Let $\phi(D) = (D^2+a^2)^k\psi(D)$, where (D^2+a^2) is not a factor of $\psi(D)$. The rule for

$\psi(D)$ is same as that of Case I. For the factor $(D^2 + a^2)$, we have:

$$\frac{1}{(D^2 + a^2)} \sin(ax) = -\frac{x}{2a} \cos(ax)$$

$$\frac{1}{D^2 + a^2} \cos(ax) = \frac{x}{2a} \sin(ax)$$

Alternatively, one can use the complex method: $\cos(ax) = \text{Re}(e^{iax})$ and $\sin(ax) = \text{Im}(e^{iax})$, and apply Rule 1.

$$\frac{1}{\phi(D)} \cos(ax) = \text{Re}\left[\frac{1}{\phi(D)} e^{iax}\right]$$

Example 5.53

Find the particular integral of $(D^2 + D + 1)y = \sin(2x)$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2 + D + 1$. The right-hand side is $\sin(2x)$, so $a = 2$. We substitute $D^2 = -a^2 = -4$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2 + D + 1} \sin(2x) = \frac{1}{-4 + D + 1} \sin(2x) = \frac{1}{D - 3} \sin(2x)$$

The denominator still contains D, so we must rationalize it by multiplying the numerator and denominator by the conjugate, $D + 3$.

$$y_p = \frac{D + 3}{(D - 3)(D + 3)} \sin(2x) = \frac{D + 3}{D^2 - 9} \sin(2x)$$

Now, we substitute $D^2 = -4$ again in the new denominator.

$$y_p = \frac{D + 3}{-4 - 9} \sin(2x) = -\frac{1}{13}(D + 3) \sin(2x)$$

We apply the operator $(D + 3)$ to $\sin(2x)$.

$$y_p = -\frac{1}{13}[D(\sin(2x)) + 3\sin(2x)] = -\frac{1}{13}[2\cos(2x) + 3\sin(2x)]$$

■

Example 5.54

Find the particular integral of $(D^3 + 1)y = \cos(x)$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^3 + 1$. Here, $a = 1$, so we substitute $D^2 = -1^2 = -1$. We rewrite the operator in terms of D^2.

$$\phi(D) = D \cdot D^2 + 1$$

Now we find the particular integral.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^3+1}\cos(x) = \frac{1}{D(D^2)+1}\cos(x) = \frac{1}{D(-1)+1}\cos(x) = \frac{1}{1-D}\cos(x)$$

We rationalize the denominator by multiplying by $1 + D$.

$$y_p = \frac{1+D}{(1-D)(1+D)}\cos(x) = \frac{1+D}{1-D^2}\cos(x)$$

Substituting $D^2 = -1$:

$$y_p = \frac{1+D}{1-(-1)}\cos(x) = \frac{1}{2}(1+D)\cos(x) = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(x) + D(\cos(x))] = \frac{1}{2}(\cos x - \sin x)$$

■

Example 5.55

Find the general solution of $(D^2 + 4)y = \cos(2x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is:

$$m^2 + 4 = 0$$

The roots are

$$m_1 = 2i \quad \text{and} \quad m_2 = -2i$$

Therefore,

$$y_c(x) = A\cos 2x + B\sin 2x$$

where A and B are arbitrary constants.

The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2 + 4$. Here, $a = 2$, so we would substitute $D^2 = -4$.

$$\phi(-4) = -4 + 4 = 0$$

This is a direct case of failure. We use the formula $\frac{1}{D^2+a^2}\cos(ax) = \frac{x}{2a}\sin(ax)$. With $a = 2$, the particular integral is:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2+4}\cos(2x) = \frac{x}{2(2)}\sin(2x) = \frac{x}{4}\sin(2x)$$

Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = A\cos 2x + B\sin 2x + \frac{x}{4}\sin(2x)$$

■

Example 5.56

Find the general solution of $(D^3 + D)y = \sin(x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is:

$$m^3 + m = m(m^2 + 1) = 0$$

The roots are

$$m_1 = 0, \quad m_2 = i \quad \text{and} \quad m_2 = -i$$

Therefore,

$$y_c(x) = c_1 + A\cos x + B\sin x$$

where $c_1,\ A$ and B are arbitrary constants.

The operator is $\phi(D) = D^3 + D = D(D^2+1)$. Here, $a = 1$, so we test by substituting $D^2 = -1$. The denominator becomes $D(-1+1) = 0$. This is a case of failure. The failing part is (D^2+1) and the non-failing part is D. We apply the operator to the non-failing part first.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D(D^2+1)}\sin(x) = \frac{1}{D}\left(\frac{1}{D^2+1}\sin(x)\right)$$

We use the failure formula $\frac{1}{D^2+a^2}\sin(ax) = -\frac{x}{2a}\cos(ax)$ with $a = 1$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D}\left(-\frac{x}{2(1)}\cos(x)\right) = -\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{D}(x\cos x)$$

Here, $\frac{1}{D}$ means "integrate with respect to x". We must evaluate $\int x\cos x\,dx$. Using integration by parts, this integral is $x\sin x + \cos x$. So, the particular integral is:

$$y_p = -\frac{1}{2}(x\sin x + \cos x)$$

Therefore, the general solution is

$$y(x) = c_1 + A\cos x + B\sin x - \frac{1}{2}(x\sin x + \cos x)$$

■

Example 5.57

Find the particular integral of $(D^2+4)y = \cos(2x)$ using the complex method.

Solution. We want to find $y_p = \text{Re}\left[\frac{1}{D^2+4}e^{i2x}\right]$. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2 + 4$. We use Rule 1 for exponentials with $a = 2i$. We test $\phi(2i) = (2i)^2 + 4 = -4 + 4 = 0$. This is a case of failure. We factor the operator: $\phi(D) = (D-2i)(D+2i)$. The failing factor is $(D-2i)$.

$$y_p = \text{Re}\left[\frac{1}{(D-2i)(D+2i)}e^{i2x}\right] = \text{Re}\left[\frac{1}{D+2i}\left(\frac{1}{D-2i}e^{i2x}\right)\right]$$

We apply the non-failing part first by substituting $D = 2i$:

$$y_p = \text{Re}\left[\frac{1}{2i+2i}\left(\frac{1}{D-2i}e^{i2x}\right)\right] = \text{Re}\left[\frac{1}{4i}\frac{x^1}{1!}e^{i2x}\right] = \text{Re}\left[\frac{x}{4i}e^{i2x}\right]$$

Since $1/i = -i$, this is $\text{Re}\left[-\frac{ix}{4}(\cos(2x) + i\sin(2x))\right]$.

$$y_p = \text{Re}\left[-\frac{ix}{4}\cos(2x) - \frac{i^2x}{4}\sin(2x)\right] = \text{Re}\left[\frac{x}{4}\sin(2x) - i\frac{x}{4}\cos(2x)\right]$$

Taking the real part gives:

$$y_p = \frac{x}{4}\sin(2x)$$

■

Example 5.58

Find the particular integral of $(D^2 - 2D + 2)y = \sin(x)$ using the complex method.

Solution. We want to find $y_p = \text{Im}\left[\frac{1}{D^2-2D+2}e^{ix}\right]$. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2 - 2D + 2$. We use Rule 1 for exponentials with $a = i$. We evaluate $\phi(i) = i^2 - 2i + 2 = -1 - 2i + 2 = 1 - 2i$. This is not a case of failure.

$$y_p = \text{Im}\left[\frac{1}{1-2i}e^{ix}\right]$$

We rationalize the complex number $\frac{1}{1-2i} = \frac{1+2i}{(1-2i)(1+2i)} = \frac{1+2i}{1-4i^2} = \frac{1+2i}{5}$.

$$y_p = \text{Im}\left[\left(\frac{1}{5} + \frac{2}{5}i\right)(\cos x + i\sin x)\right]$$

We expand the product:

$$y_p = \text{Im}\left[\frac{1}{5}\cos x + \frac{1}{5}i\sin x + \frac{2}{5}i\cos x + \frac{2}{5}i^2\sin x\right]$$

$$y_p = \text{Im}\left[\left(\frac{1}{5}\cos x - \frac{2}{5}\sin x\right) + i\left(\frac{1}{5}\sin x + \frac{2}{5}\cos x\right)\right]$$

Taking the imaginary part gives:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{5}\sin x + \frac{2}{5}\cos x$$

■

Rule 3:

To evaluate $\frac{1}{\phi(D)}x^m$, we expand the operator $\frac{1}{\phi(D)}$ as an infinite series in ascending powers of D using binomial expansion or formal long division. We only need to expand up to the D^m term, since $D^k(x^m) = 0$ for all $k > m$.

Procedure:

1. Take the lowest degree term of $\phi(D)$ common. This will create an expression of the form $\dfrac{1}{c(1 \pm \psi(D))}$.
2. Use a geometric series expansion, such as $(1+z)^{-1} = 1 - z + z^2 - \dots$ or $(1-z)^{-1} = 1 + z + z^2 + \dots$, where z is the operator term $\psi(D)$.
3. Expand the series up to the power D^m.
4. Apply the resulting polynomial operator term by term to x^m.

Example 5.59

Find the particular integral of $(D^2 + D + 1)y = x^2$.

Solution. The particular integral is given by $y_p = \dfrac{1}{1 + D + D^2} x^2$. We expand the operator $(1 + (D + D^2))^{-1}$ using the geometric series formula $(1+z)^{-1} = 1 - z + z^2 - \dots$. We only need terms up to D^2 since higher derivatives of x^2 are zero.

$$\begin{aligned} y_p &= [1 - (D + D^2) + (D + D^2)^2 - \dots]x^2 \\ &= [1 - D - D^2 + (D^2 + 2D^3 + D^4) - \dots]x^2 \\ &= (1 - D)x^2 \quad (\text{ignoring terms of order } D^3 \text{ and higher}) \end{aligned}$$

Now we apply the operator to x^2.

$$y_p = 1(x^2) - D(x^2) = x^2 - 2x$$

■

Example 5.60

Find the particular integral of $(D^2 - 4D)y = 12x^2 + 6x - 2$.

Solution. The particular integral is $y_p = \dfrac{1}{D^2 - 4D}(12x^2 + 6x - 2)$. We factor out the lowest power of D, which is $-4D$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{-4D(1 - D/4)}(12x^2 + 6x - 2) = -\frac{1}{4D}(1 - D/4)^{-1}(12x^2 + 6x - 2)$$

We expand $(1-z)^{-1} = 1 + z + z^2 + \dots$ with $z = D/4$. We need terms up to D^2.

$$y_p = -\frac{1}{4D}\left[1 + \frac{D}{4} + \frac{D^2}{16}\right](12x^2 + 6x - 2)$$

First, apply the operator in the brackets.

$$= -\frac{1}{4D}\left[(12x^2 + 6x - 2) + \frac{1}{4}D(12x^2 + 6x - 2) + \frac{1}{16}D^2(12x^2 + 6x - 2)\right]$$

$$= -\frac{1}{4D}\left[(12x^2+6x-2)+\frac{1}{4}(24x+6)+\frac{1}{16}(24)\right]$$

$$= -\frac{1}{4D}\left[12x^2+6x-2+6x+\frac{3}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\right] = -\frac{1}{4D}[12x^2+12x+1]$$

The operator $\frac{1}{D}$ means "integrate with respect to x".

$$y_p = -\frac{1}{4}\int(12x^2+12x+1)\,dx = -\frac{1}{4}\left(4x^3+6x^2+x\right) = -x^3-\frac{3}{2}x^2-\frac{1}{4}x$$

■

Example 5.61

Find the particular integral of $(D^3+8)y = x^4+2x+1$.

Solution. The particular integral is $y_p = \frac{1}{8+D^3}(x^4+2x+1)$. We factor out the constant 8.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{8(1+D^3/8)}(x^4+2x+1) = \frac{1}{8}(1+D^3/8)^{-1}(x^4+2x+1)$$

We expand $(1+z)^{-1} = 1-z+z^2-\dots$ with $z = D^3/8$. We only need terms up to D^4, so the expansion is $1-D^3/8$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{8}\left(1-\frac{D^3}{8}\right)(x^4+2x+1)$$

We apply the operator in the parentheses.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{8}\left[(x^4+2x+1)-\frac{1}{8}D^3(x^4+2x+1)\right]$$

The third derivative of x^4+2x+1 is $D(x^4+...) = 4x^3+...$, $D^2(...) = 12x^2$, $D^3(...) = 24x$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{8}\left[x^4+2x+1-\frac{1}{8}(24x)\right] = \frac{1}{8}[x^4+2x+1-3x] = \frac{1}{8}(x^4-x+1)$$

■

Example 5.62

Find the particular integral of $D^2(D+1)^2y = x$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2(1+2D+D^2)$. The lowest power of D is D^2.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2(1+D)^2}x = \frac{1}{D^2}(1+D)^{-2}x$$

We expand $(1+z)^{-2} = 1-2z+3z^2-\dots$ with $z = D$. We only need terms up to D^1.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2}(1-2D+\dots)x = \frac{1}{D^2}[1(x)-2D(x)] = \frac{1}{D^2}(x-2)$$

The operator $\frac{1}{D^2}$ means "integrate twice with respect to x".

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D}\int (x-2)\,dx = \frac{1}{D}\left(\frac{x^2}{2} - 2x\right)$$

$$y_p = \int \left(\frac{x^2}{2} - 2x\right)\,dx = \frac{x^3}{6} - x^2$$

■

Rule 4:

This is a powerful shift theorem. To evaluate $\frac{1}{\phi(D)}e^{ax}V(x)$, we move the exponential term e^{ax} to the left of the operator. In doing so, we must replace every D in the operator with $(D+a)$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{\phi(D)}e^{ax}V(x) = e^{ax}\frac{1}{\phi(D+a)}V(x)$$

After applying this shift, we then evaluate the new expression $\frac{1}{\phi(D+a)}V(x)$ using the appropriate rule for the function $V(x)$ (e.g., Rule 2 if $V(x)$ is a sine/cosine, Rule 3 if it's a polynomial).

Example 5.63

Find the particular integral of $(D^2 - 2D + 1)y = x^2e^{3x}$.

Solution. The particular integral is given by $y_p = \frac{1}{(D-1)^2}x^2e^{3x}$. Here, $a = 3$ and $V(x) = x^2$. We apply the shift theorem by moving e^{3x} to the left and replacing D with $(D+3)$ in the operator.

$$y_p = e^{3x}\frac{1}{((D+3)-1)^2}x^2 = e^{3x}\frac{1}{(D+2)^2}x^2 = e^{3x}\frac{1}{D^2+4D+4}x^2$$

Now we solve $\frac{1}{4+4D+D^2}x^2$ using the method for polynomials (Rule 3). We factor out the constant 4 and expand the operator as a series up to D^2.

$$y_p = e^{3x}\frac{1}{4(1+D+D^2/4)}x^2 = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}[1+(D+D^2/4)]^{-1}x^2$$

Using the expansion $(1+z)^{-1} = 1 - z + z^2 - \ldots$ with $z = D + D^2/4$:

$$y_p = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}[1-(D+D^2/4)+(D+...)^2-\ldots]x^2 = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}[1-D-D^2/4+D^2]x^2 = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}[1-D+\frac{3}{4}D^2]x^2$$

Applying the resulting operator to x^2:

$$y_p = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}[x^2 - D(x^2) + \frac{3}{4}D^2(x^2)] = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}[x^2 - 2x + \frac{3}{4}(2)] = \frac{e^{3x}}{4}(x^2 - 2x + \frac{3}{2})$$

■

Example 5.64

Find the particular integral of $(D^2+1)y = e^{-x}\cos x$.

Solution. The particular integral is $y_p = \frac{1}{D^2+1}e^{-x}\cos x$. Here, $a = -1$ and $V(x) = \cos x$. We apply the shift theorem by replacing D with $(D-1)$.

$$y_p = e^{-x}\frac{1}{(D-1)^2+1}\cos x = e^{-x}\frac{1}{D^2-2D+1+1}\cos x = e^{-x}\frac{1}{D^2-2D+2}\cos x$$

Now we solve the new problem using the method for cosines (Rule 2), substituting $D^2 = -1^2 = -1$.

$$y_p = e^{-x}\frac{1}{-1-2D+2}\cos x = e^{-x}\frac{1}{1-2D}\cos x$$

We rationalize the operator by multiplying by $1+2D$.

$$y_p = e^{-x}\frac{1+2D}{(1-2D)(1+2D)}\cos x = e^{-x}\frac{1+2D}{1-4D^2}\cos x$$

Again, we substitute $D^2 = -1$.

$$y_p = e^{-x}\frac{1+2D}{1-4(-1)}\cos x = \frac{e^{-x}}{5}(1+2D)\cos x = \frac{e^{-x}}{5}(\cos x+2D(\cos x)) = \frac{e^{-x}}{5}(\cos x-2\sin x)$$

■

Example 5.65

Find the particular integral of $(D+2)^2y = e^{-2x}\sin x$.

Solution. The particular integral is $y_p = \frac{1}{(D+2)^2}e^{-2x}\sin x$. Here, $a = -2$ and $V(x) = \sin x$. We apply the shift theorem, replacing D with $(D-2)$.

$$y_p = e^{-2x}\frac{1}{((D-2)+2)^2}\sin x = e^{-2x}\frac{1}{D^2}\sin x$$

The operator $\frac{1}{D^2}$ means we integrate $\sin x$ twice.

$$y_p = e^{-2x}\frac{1}{D}\left(\int \sin x\,dx\right) = e^{-2x}\frac{1}{D}(-\cos x) = e^{-2x}\left(\int -\cos x\,dx\right) = e^{-2x}(-\sin x) = -e^{-2x}\sin x$$

■

Example 5.66

Find the particular integral of $(D-1)^3y = xe^x$.

Solution. The particular integral is $y_p = \frac{1}{(D-1)^3}xe^x$. Here, $a = 1$ and $V(x) = x$. We apply the shift theorem, replacing D with $(D+1)$.

$$y_p = e^x\frac{1}{((D+1)-1)^3}x = e^x\frac{1}{D^3}x$$

The operator $\frac{1}{D^3}$ means we must integrate the function x three times.

$$\int x\,dx = \frac{x^2}{2}$$

$$\int \frac{x^2}{2}\,dx = \frac{x^3}{6}$$

$$\int \frac{x^3}{6}\,dx = \frac{x^4}{24}$$

Therefore, the particular integral is:

$$y_p = e^x\left(\frac{x^4}{24}\right) = \frac{x^4 e^x}{24}$$

■

Rule 5:

This is another important theorem, sometimes called the "product with x" rule.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{\phi(D)}xV(x) = \left[x - \frac{\phi'(D)}{\phi(D)}\right]\frac{1}{\phi(D)}V(x)$$

where $\phi'(D)$ is the derivative of the polynomial $\phi(D)$ with respect to the variable D. This rule is particularly useful when $V(x)$ is a trigonometric function, as it avoids complex numbers.

Note: If $F(x)$ is a sum of functions, e.g., $F(x) = F_1(x) + F_2(x)$, the particular integral can be found for each part separately and then added together by the principle of superposition:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{\phi(D)}(F_1(x) + F_2(x)) = \frac{1}{\phi(D)}F_1(x) + \frac{1}{\phi(D)}F_2(x)$$

Example 5.67

Find the particular integral of $(D^2+4)y = x\sin(x)$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2+4$, and its derivative with respect to D is $\phi'(D) = 2D$. The function is of the form $xV(x)$ where $V(x) = \sin(x)$. Applying the formula:

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2+4}\right]\frac{1}{D^2+4}\sin(x)$$

First, we evaluate the outer part, $\frac{1}{D^2+4}\sin(x)$, by substituting $D^2 = -1^2 = -1$.

$$\frac{1}{-1+4}\sin(x) = \frac{1}{3}\sin(x)$$

Now, we substitute this back into the main expression:

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2+4}\right]\left(\frac{1}{3}\sin(x)\right) = \frac{x}{3}\sin(x) - \frac{2}{3}\frac{D}{D^2+4}\sin(x)$$

We evaluate the remaining operator term, again substituting $D^2 = -1$:

$$\frac{D}{D^2+4}\sin(x) = \frac{D}{-1+4}\sin(x) = \frac{1}{3}D(\sin x) = \frac{1}{3}\cos x$$

Putting it all together:

$$y_p = \frac{x}{3}\sin x - \frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{1}{3}\cos x\right) = \frac{x}{3}\sin x - \frac{2}{9}\cos x$$

■

Example 5.68

Find the particular integral of $(D^2+1)y = x\cos(x)$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = D^2+1$, so $\phi'(D) = 2D$. The function is $xV(x)$ where $V(x) = \cos(x)$. Applying the formula:

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2+1}\right]\frac{1}{D^2+1}\cos(x)$$

The outer part, $\frac{1}{D^2+1}\cos(x)$, is a case of failure since substituting $D^2 = -1^2 = -1$ makes the denominator zero. We must use the failure formula: $\frac{1}{D^2+a^2}\cos(ax) = \frac{x}{2a}\sin(ax)$.

$$\frac{1}{D^2+1}\cos(x) = \frac{x}{2(1)}\sin(x) = \frac{x}{2}\sin(x)$$

Now, substitute this result back into the main expression:

$$\begin{aligned}
y_p &= \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2+1}\right]\left(\frac{x}{2}\sin(x)\right) = \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) - \frac{2D}{D^2+1}\left(\frac{x}{2}\sin(x)\right) \\
&= \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) - \frac{D}{D^2+1}(x\sin x) = \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) - \frac{1}{D^2+1}(Dx\sin x) \\
&= \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) - \frac{1}{D^2+1}\sin x - \frac{1}{D^2+1}x\cos x \\
&= \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) - \frac{1}{D^2+1}\sin x - y_p \\
&= \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) + \frac{x}{2}\cos x - y_p \qquad \left[\because \frac{1}{D^2+a^2}\sin ax = -\frac{x}{2a}\cos ax\right]
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$2y_p = \frac{x^2}{2}\sin(x) + \frac{x}{2}\cos x$$

or

$$y_p = \frac{x^2}{4}\sin(x) + \frac{x}{4}\cos x$$

■

Example 5.69

Find the particular integral of $(D^2-1)y = xe^{2x}$.

Solution. This problem is of the form xe^{ax} and is best solved with Rule 4 (shift theorem). However, it can also be solved with Rule 5. Here $\phi(D) = D^2 - 1$, $\phi'(D) = 2D$, and $V(x) = e^{2x}$.

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2-1}\right]\frac{1}{D^2-1}e^{2x}$$

First, evaluate the outer part by substituting $D = 2$:

$$\frac{1}{D^2-1}e^{2x} = \frac{1}{2^2-1}e^{2x} = \frac{1}{3}e^{2x}$$

Now, substitute this back into the main expression:

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2-1}\right]\left(\frac{1}{3}e^{2x}\right) = \frac{x}{3}e^{2x} - \frac{2}{3}\frac{D}{D^2-1}e^{2x}$$

We evaluate the remaining operator term by substituting $D = 2$:

$$\frac{D}{D^2-1}e^{2x} = \frac{2}{2^2-1}e^{2x} = \frac{2}{3}e^{2x}$$

Putting it all together:

$$y_p = \frac{x}{3}e^{2x} - \frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{2}{3}e^{2x}\right) = \frac{x}{3}e^{2x} - \frac{4}{9}e^{2x}$$

■

Example 5.70

Find the particular integral of $(D^2-2D+1)y = x\sin x$.

Solution. The operator is $\phi(D) = (D-1)^2 = D^2 - 2D + 1$, so $\phi'(D) = 2D - 2$. Here $V(x) = \sin x$.

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D-2}{D^2-2D+1}\right]\frac{1}{D^2-2D+1}\sin(x)$$

First, evaluate the outer part by substituting $D^2 = -1$:

$$\frac{1}{-1-2D+1}\sin x = \frac{1}{-2D}\sin x = -\frac{1}{2}\int \sin x\,dx = -\frac{1}{2}(-\cos x) = \frac{1}{2}\cos x$$

Now, substitute this back into the main expression:

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D-2}{D^2-2D+1}\right]\left(\frac{1}{2}\cos x\right) = \frac{x}{2}\cos x - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2D-2}{D^2-2D+1}\cos x\right)$$

Evaluate the remaining operator term by substituting $D^2 = -1$:

$$\frac{2D-2}{-1-2D+1}\cos x = \frac{2D-2}{-2D}\cos x = \frac{D-1}{-D}\cos x = (-1 + \frac{1}{D})\cos x$$

$$= -\cos x + \int \cos x\,dx = -\cos x + \sin x$$

Putting it all together:

$$y_p = \frac{x}{2}\cos x - \frac{1}{2}(-\cos x + \sin x) = \frac{x}{2}\cos x + \frac{1}{2}\cos x - \frac{1}{2}\sin x$$

■

Additional Examples: General Solutions of Non-Homogeneous ODEs using the inverse operator method

Example 5.71

Solve $(D^2 + 5D + 6)y = e^{-x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 + 5m + 6 = 0 \implies (m+2)(m+3) = 0$, so the roots are $m = -2, -3$. The complementary function is $y_c = c_1 e^{-2x} + c_2 e^{-3x}$. For the particular integral, we have $a = -1$. Since $\phi(-1) = (-1)^2 + 5(-1) + 6 = 1 - 5 + 6 = 2 \neq 0$, we have a non-failure case.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2 + 5D + 6} e^{-x} = \frac{e^{-x}}{(-1)^2 + 5(-1) + 6} = \frac{e^{-x}}{2}$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1 e^{-2x} + c_2 e^{-3x} + \frac{1}{2} e^{-x}$. ■

Example 5.72

Solve $(D^2 - 6D + 9)y = 5e^{3x}$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation is $m^2 - 6m + 9 = 0 \implies (m-3)^2 = 0$, so we have a repeated root $m = 3$. The complementary function is $y_c = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{3x}$. For the particular integral, with $a = 3$, we find $\phi(3) = 3^2 - 6(3) + 9 = 0$. This is a case of failure. The operator is $\phi(D) = (D-3)^2$, so $k = 2$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{(D-3)^2}(5e^{3x}) = 5\left(\frac{x^2}{2!} e^{3x}\right) = \frac{5}{2} x^2 e^{3x}$$

The general solution is $y(x) = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{3x} + \frac{5}{2} x^2 e^{3x}$. ■

Example 5.73

Solve $(D^2 - D - 2)y = \sin(2x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 - m - 2 = 0 \implies (m-2)(m+1) = 0$ gives roots $m = 2, -1$. So, $y_c = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{-x}$. For the particular integral, we substitute $D^2 = -2^2 = -4$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2 - D - 2}\sin(2x) = \frac{1}{-4 - D - 2}\sin(2x) = \frac{1}{-D-6}\sin(2x) = -\frac{1}{D+6}\sin(2x)$$

Rationalizing gives $-\frac{D-6}{D^2-36}\sin(2x) = -\frac{D-6}{-4-36}\sin(2x) = \frac{1}{40}(D-6)\sin(2x)$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{40}(D(\sin(2x)) - 6\sin(2x)) = \frac{1}{40}(2\cos(2x) - 6\sin(2x)) = \frac{1}{20}(\cos(2x) - 3\sin(2x))$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{-x} + \frac{1}{20}(\cos(2x) - 3\sin(2x))$. ■

Example 5.74

Solve $(D^2 + 16)y = \cos(4x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 + 16 = 0$ gives roots $m = \pm 4i$. So, $y_c = c_1 \cos(4x) + c_2 \sin(4x)$. For the particular integral, substituting $D^2 = -4^2 = -16$ gives $\phi(-16) = -16 + 16 = 0$. This is a case of failure. Using the failure formula for cosine with $a = 4$:

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2 + 16} \cos(4x) = \frac{x}{2(4)} \sin(4x) = \frac{x}{8} \sin(4x)$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1 \cos(4x) + c_2 \sin(4x) + \frac{x}{8} \sin(4x)$. ■

Example 5.75

Solve $(D^2 - 3D + 2)y = 4x$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 - 3m + 2 = 0 \implies (m - 1)(m - 2) = 0$ gives $y_c = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{2x}$. For the particular integral, we expand the operator.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{2 - 3D + D^2}(4x) = \frac{1}{2(1 - \frac{3}{2}D + \frac{1}{2}D^2)}(4x) = 2 \cdot [1 - (\frac{3}{2}D - \frac{1}{2}D^2)]^{-1} x$$

We expand $(1 - z)^{-1} = 1 + z + \dots$ up to the D term.

$$y_p = 2[1 + (\frac{3}{2}D - \frac{1}{2}D^2) + \dots]x = 2[1 + \frac{3}{2}D]x = 2[x + \frac{3}{2}D(x)] = 2(x + \frac{3}{2}) = 2x + 3$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1 e^x + c_2 e^{2x} + 2x + 3$. ■

Example 5.76

Solve $(D^3 + D^2)y = 3x^2 + 1$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^3 + m^2 = 0 \implies m^2(m + 1) = 0$ gives roots $m = 0$ (repeated twice) and $m = -1$. The complementary function is $y_c = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{0x} + c_3 e^{-x} = c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 e^{-x}$. For the particular integral, we have $y_p = \frac{1}{D^2(1 + D)}(3x^2 + 1)$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2}(1 + D)^{-1}(3x^2 + 1) = \frac{1}{D^2}(1 - D + D^2 - \dots)(3x^2 + 1)$$

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2}[(3x^2+1) - D(3x^2+1) + D^2(3x^2+1)] = \frac{1}{D^2}[(3x^2+1) - (6x) + (6)] = \frac{1}{D^2}(3x^2 - 6x + 7)$$

The operator $1/D^2$ means integrate twice.

$$\int (3x^2 - 6x + 7)dx = x^3 - 3x^2 + 7x$$

$$\int (x^3 - 3x^2 + 7x)dx = \frac{x^4}{4} - x^3 + \frac{7x^2}{2}$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1 + c_2 x + c_3 e^{-x} + \frac{x^4}{4} - x^3 + \frac{7x^2}{2}$. ■

Example 5.77

Solve $(D^2 - 4)y = xe^x$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 - 4 = 0$ gives $y_c = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{-2x}$. For the particular integral, we use the shift theorem with $a = 1, V(x) = x$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{D^2 - 4} xe^x = e^x \frac{1}{(D+1)^2 - 4} x = e^x \frac{1}{D^2 + 2D - 3} x$$

Now we solve $\frac{1}{-3 + 2D + D^2} x$ using the polynomial rule.

$$y_p = e^x \frac{1}{-3(1 - \frac{2}{3}D - \frac{1}{3}D^2)} x = -\frac{e^x}{3}[1 - (\frac{2}{3}D + \frac{1}{3}D^2)]^{-1} x$$

$$y_p = -\frac{e^x}{3}[1 + \frac{2}{3}D]x = -\frac{e^x}{3}[x + \frac{2}{3}D(x)] = -\frac{e^x}{3}(x + \frac{2}{3})$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1 e^{2x} + c_2 e^{-2x} - \frac{e^x}{3}(x + \frac{2}{3})$. ■

Example 5.78

Solve $(D^2 - 4D + 4)y = e^{2x}\cos(3x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 - 4m + 4 = 0 \implies (m-2)^2 = 0$ gives $y_c = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{2x}$. For the particular integral, we use the shift theorem with $a = 2, V(x) = \cos(3x)$.

$$y_p = \frac{1}{(D-2)^2} e^{2x}\cos(3x) = e^{2x} \frac{1}{((D+2)-2)^2}\cos(3x) = e^{2x}\frac{1}{D^2}\cos(3x)$$

The operator $1/D^2$ means integrate twice.

$$\int \cos(3x)dx = \frac{\sin(3x)}{3}$$

$$\int \frac{\sin(3x)}{3} dx = -\frac{\cos(3x)}{9}$$

So, $y_p = e^{2x}(-\frac{\cos(3x)}{9})$. The general solution is $y(x) = (c_1 + c_2 x)e^{2x} - \frac{1}{9}e^{2x}\cos(3x)$. ■

Example 5.79

Solve $(D^2 + 1)y = x\sin(2x)$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2 + 1 = 0$ gives $y_c = c_1 \cos x + c_2 \sin x$. For the particular integral, we use the product rule with $V(x) = \sin(2x)$. Note $\phi(D) = D^2 + 1$ and $\phi'(D) = 2D$.

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2 + 1}\right]\frac{1}{D^2 + 1}\sin(2x)$$

First, evaluate $\frac{1}{D^2+1}\sin(2x)$ by substituting $D^2=-4$: $\frac{1}{-4+1}\sin(2x) = -\frac{1}{3}\sin(2x)$.

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D}{D^2+1}\right](-\frac{1}{3}\sin(2x)) = -\frac{x}{3}\sin(2x) + \frac{2}{3}\frac{D}{D^2+1}\sin(2x)$$

Now evaluate $\frac{D}{D^2+1}\sin(2x) = \frac{D}{-4+1}\sin(2x) = -\frac{1}{3}D(\sin(2x)) = -\frac{2}{3}\cos(2x)$.

$$y_p = -\frac{x}{3}\sin(2x) + \frac{2}{3}(-\frac{2}{3}\cos(2x)) = -\frac{x}{3}\sin(2x) - \frac{4}{9}\cos(2x)$$

The general solution is $y(x) = c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x - \frac{x}{3}\sin(2x) - \frac{4}{9}\cos(2x)$. ■

Example 5.80

Solve $(D^2+2D+2)y = x^2$.

Solution. The auxiliary equation $m^2+2m+2=0$ gives $m=-1\pm i$, so $y_c = e^{-x}(c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x)$. This is a polynomial case (Rule 3) and is easier to solve that way. Let's solve it with Rule 5 where $V(x)=x$. $\phi(D) = D^2+2D+2, \phi'(D) = 2D+2$.

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D+2}{D^2+2D+2}\right]\frac{1}{D^2+2D+2}x$$

The outer part is $\frac{1}{2+2D+D^2}x = \frac{1}{2}(1+D)^{-1}x = \frac{1}{2}(1-D)x = \frac{1}{2}(x-1)$.

$$y_p = \left[x - \frac{2D+2}{D^2+2D+2}\right](\frac{x-1}{2}) = \frac{x(x-1)}{2} - \frac{D+1}{D^2+2D+2}(x-1)$$

The operator term is $\frac{D+1}{2+2D+D^2}(x-1) = \frac{1}{2}(D+1)(1-D)(x-1) = \frac{1}{2}(1-D^2)(x-1) = \frac{1}{2}(x-1)$.

$$y_p = \frac{x^2-x}{2} - \frac{x-1}{2} = \frac{x^2-2x+1}{2} = \frac{(x-1)^2}{2}$$

The general solution is $y(x) = e^{-x}(c_1\cos x + c_2\sin x) + \frac{1}{2}(x-1)^2$. ■

Exercise 5.1

Solve the following differential equations. For non-homogeneous equations, find the general solution. For initial value problems, find the particular solution.

1. Find the general solution of the linear equation:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + 2xy = 2xe^{-x^2}$$

2. Solve the initial value problem:

$$x\frac{dy}{dx} - y = x^2\sin x, \quad y(\pi) = 0$$

3. Find the general solution of:

$$(1+x^2)\frac{dy}{dx} + 2xy = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$$

4. Solve the linear equation:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + y\sec x = \tan x$$

5. Test for exactness and solve:

$$(3x^2 + 4xy)\,dx + (2x^2 + 2y)\,dy = 0$$

6. Solve the initial value problem:

$$(2x\cos y + 3x^2 y)\,dx + (x^3 - x^2\sin y - y)\,dy = 0, \quad y(0) = 2$$

7. Test for exactness and solve:

$$(e^y + 1)\cos x\,dx + e^y \sin x\,dy = 0$$

8. Show that the following equation is not exact, then find an integrating factor to solve it:

$$(x^2 + y^2 + x)\,dx + xy\,dy = 0$$

9. Find the general solution of:

$$y'' + y' - 12y = 0$$

10. Solve the initial value problem:

$$y'' - 8y' + 16y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 1$$

11. Find the general solution of:

$$y'' + 2y' + 5y = 0$$

12. Find the general solution of the third-order equation:

$$y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = 0$$

13. Find the general solution of:

$$y^{(4)} - 16y = 0$$

14. Find the general solution of:

$$y'' + y' - 2y = 4x^2$$

15. Find the general solution of:

$$y'' - 4y' = 8e^{4x}$$

16. Solve the initial value problem:

$$y'' + 4y = 3\sin(2x), \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$$

17. Find the general solution of:

$$y'' - 2y' - 3y = 4x - 5 + 6xe^{2x}$$

18. Find the general solution of:

$$y'' + y = 4x \cos x$$

19. Use the inverse operator method to find the particular integral for:

$$(D^2 + 3D - 4)y = \sin(2x)$$

20. Use the inverse operator method to find the particular integral for:

$$(D - 2)^3 y = e^{2x}$$

Chapter 6

An Introduction to the Gamma and Beta Functions

This unit introduces two of the most important and elegant "special functions" in mathematics: the **Gamma function** and the **Beta function**, also known as the Euler integrals. We will explore how the Gamma function provides a remarkable generalization of the factorial concept to complex numbers. We will then study the Beta function and uncover the beautiful and powerful relationship that connects these two seemingly distinct integrals, opening the door to solving a new class of definite integrals.

6.1 The Gamma and Beta Functions

6.1.1 The Gamma Function (Euler's Integral of the Second Kind)

The Gamma function, denoted by $\Gamma(n)$, is a generalization of the factorial function from positive integers to a continuous function on the complex plane (though we will focus on its properties for real numbers $n > 0$).

Definition of the Gamma Function

For any real number $n > 0$, the Gamma function is defined by the improper integral:

$$\Gamma(n) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{n-1} \, dx$$

This integral is convergent for all $n > 0$.

Properties of the Gamma Function

1. **Fundamental Recurrence Relation:** This property is the cornerstone of the Gamma function's connection to factorials.

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n\Gamma(n) \quad \text{for } n > 0$$

Proof. We use integration by parts on the definition of $\Gamma(n+1)$.

$$\Gamma(n+1) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^n \, dx$$

Let $u = x^n$ and $dv = e^{-x}\,dx$. Then $du = nx^{n-1}\,dx$ and $v = -e^{-x}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma(n+1) &= \left[-x^n e^{-x}\right]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty (-e^{-x})(nx^{n-1})\,dx \\ &= (0-0) + n\int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{n-1}\,dx \\ &= n\Gamma(n)\end{aligned}$$

The limit term $\lim_{x\to\infty} -x^n e^{-x}$ is zero because the exponential function e^x grows much faster than any polynomial x^n. ■

2. **Value at n=1:**

$$\Gamma(1) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{1-1}\,dx = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}\,dx = [-e^{-x}]_0^\infty = 0 - (-e^0) = 1$$

3. **Relationship to Factorials:** Using the recurrence relation and the fact that $\Gamma(1) = 1$, we can show that for any positive integer n:

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n!$$

For example, $\Gamma(4) = 3\Gamma(3) = 3\cdot 2\Gamma(2) = 3\cdot 2\cdot 1\Gamma(1) = 3!\cdot 1 = 3!$.

4. **Value at n=1/2 (The Euler-Poisson Integral):** A famous and important result is:

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}$$

Proof. We begin with the definition of the Gamma function:

$$\Gamma(n) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{n-1}\,dx$$

Substituting $n = 1/2$ into the definition, we get:

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{\frac{1}{2}-1}\,dx = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{-1/2}\,dx = \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-x}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$$

This integral is not straightforward to evaluate in its current form. We perform a substitution to simplify the integrand. Let $x = t^2$. This implies that $dx = 2t\,dt$. We also note that $\sqrt{x} = \sqrt{t^2} = t$ (since t will be positive over the new integration range). The limits of integration do not change: when $x = 0$, $t = 0$, and as $x \to \infty$, $t \to \infty$. Substituting these into the integral:

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) &= \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-t^2}}{t}(2t\,dt) \\ &= \int_0^\infty 2e^{-t^2}\,dt \\ &= 2\int_0^\infty e^{-t^2}\,dt\end{aligned}$$

The integral $\int_0^\infty e^{-t^2}\,dt$ is known as the **Gaussian integral** (or more precisely, half of it). It is a standard result in multivariable calculus that its value is $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$. We state this result here.

The Gaussian Integral

The value of the definite improper integral of the Gaussian function is:

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2}\,dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$$

(This is typically proven by squaring the integral, converting to polar coordinates, and evaluating the resulting double integral.)

Using this standard result, we can complete our proof.

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 2\int_0^\infty e^{-t^2}\,dt = 2\left(\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}$$

This concludes the proof. ■

Example 6.1

Evaluate $\Gamma(5)$.

Proof. Using the factorial property, $\Gamma(n+1) = n!$. We can write $\Gamma(5) = \Gamma(4+1)$. Therefore, $\Gamma(5) = 4!$.

$$\Gamma(5) = 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 24$$

■

Example 6.2

Evaluate $\int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^6\,dx$.

Proof. We compare the integral with the definition of the Gamma function, $\Gamma(n) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{n-1}\,dx$. By matching the exponent of x, we see that $n-1=6$, which implies $n=7$. Therefore, the integral is equal to $\Gamma(7)$. Using the factorial property, $\Gamma(7) = \Gamma(6+1) = 6!$.

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^6\,dx = \Gamma(7) = 6! = 720$$

■

Example 6.3

Evaluate $\Gamma(7/2)$.

Proof. We use the recurrence relation $\Gamma(n+1) = n\Gamma(n)$ repeatedly to reduce the argument until we reach $\Gamma(1/2)$. We can write $\Gamma(7/2) = \Gamma(5/2+1)$.

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma(7/2) &= \frac{5}{2}\Gamma(5/2)\\ &= \frac{5}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{2}\Gamma(3/2)\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2)$$

Since we know $\Gamma(1/2) = \sqrt{\pi}$, we substitute this value.

$$\Gamma(7/2) = \frac{15}{8}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{8}$$

■

Example 6.4

Evaluate $\Gamma(-1/2)$.

Proof. The definition of the Gamma function integral does not converge for $n \leq 0$. However, we can use the recurrence relation $\Gamma(n+1) = n\Gamma(n)$ to define values for negative non-integers. We rearrange it to be $\Gamma(n) = \dfrac{\Gamma(n+1)}{n}$. To find $\Gamma(-1/2)$, we let $n = -1/2$.

$$\Gamma(-1/2) = \frac{\Gamma(-1/2+1)}{-1/2} = \frac{\Gamma(1/2)}{-1/2} = -2\Gamma(1/2)$$

Using the known value $\Gamma(1/2) = \sqrt{\pi}$, we get:

$$\Gamma(-1/2) = -2\sqrt{\pi}$$

■

Example 6.5

Evaluate the integral $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty e^{-y^2}\,dy$.

Proof. This is the Gaussian integral. We can solve it using the Gamma function. Let $x = y^2$, which means $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $dy = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}dx = \dfrac{1}{2}x^{-1/2}dx$. The limits remain 0 to ∞. Substituting into the integral:

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-x}\left(\frac{1}{2}x^{-1/2}\,dx\right) = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{-1/2}\,dx$$

The integral matches the definition of $\Gamma(n)$ with $n-1 = -1/2$, so $n = 1/2$.

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{1/2-1}\,dx = \frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$$

■

Example 6.6

Evaluate the integral $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty x^4e^{-2x}\,dx$.

Proof. This integral is almost in the form of the Gamma function, but the exponent in the exponential is $-2x$ instead of $-x$. We must use a substitution. Let $u = 2x$.

This means $x = u/2$ and $dx = du/2$. The limits of integration remain unchanged. Substituting these into the integral:

$$\int_0^\infty \left(\frac{u}{2}\right)^4 e^{-u}\left(\frac{du}{2}\right) = \int_0^\infty \frac{u^4}{16}e^{-u}\frac{du}{2}$$
$$= \frac{1}{32}\int_0^\infty e^{-u}u^4\,du$$

The integral is now in the standard form for $\Gamma(n)$ with $n-1=4$, so $n=5$.

$$\frac{1}{32}\Gamma(5) = \frac{1}{32}(4!) = \frac{24}{32} = \frac{3}{4}$$

■

Example 6.7

Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 (\ln x)^4\,dx$.

Proof. This integral can be transformed into the Gamma function form. Let $\ln x = -u$, which means $x = e^{-u}$. Then $dx = -e^{-u}du$. We must change the limits: when $x = 1$, $u = -\ln 1 = 0$. As $x \to 0^+$, $u \to -(-\infty) = \infty$. Substituting into the integral:

$$\int_\infty^0 (-u)^4(-e^{-u}du) = -\int_\infty^0 u^4e^{-u}du = \int_0^\infty e^{-u}u^4\,du$$

This is the integral for $\Gamma(5)$.

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-u}u^4\,du = \Gamma(5) = 4! = 24$$

■

Example 6.8

Show that $\int_0^\infty x^{n-1}e^{-kx}\,dx = \frac{\Gamma(n)}{k^n}$.

Proof. This is a general form of a previous example. We use the substitution $u = kx$. This implies $x = u/k$ and $dx = du/k$. The limits of integration do not change. Substituting into the integral:

$$\int_0^\infty \left(\frac{u}{k}\right)^{n-1} e^{-u}\left(\frac{du}{k}\right) = \int_0^\infty \frac{u^{n-1}}{k^{n-1}}e^{-u}\frac{du}{k}$$
$$= \frac{1}{k^n}\int_0^\infty e^{-u}u^{n-1}\,du$$

The remaining integral is the definition of $\Gamma(n)$. Therefore, the result is:

$$\frac{\Gamma(n)}{k^n}$$

■

6.1.2 The Beta Function (Euler's Integral of the First Kind)

The Beta function is a function of two variables, m and n, and is defined by a definite integral over a finite interval.

Definition of the Beta Function

For any real numbers $m > 0$ and $n > 0$, the Beta function is defined by:

$$B(m,n) = \int_0^1 x^{m-1}(1-x)^{n-1}\,dx$$

Properties of the Beta Function

1. **Symmetry:** The Beta function is symmetric in its arguments.

$$B(m,n) = B(n,m)$$

Proof. This is proven using the substitution $x = 1 - y$ in the definition.

$$\begin{aligned} B(m,n) &= \int_0^1 x^{m-1}(1-x)^{n-1}\,dx \quad (\text{Let } x = 1-y, dx = -dy) \\ &= \int_1^0 (1-y)^{m-1}(y)^{n-1}(-dy) \\ &= \int_0^1 y^{n-1}(1-y)^{m-1}\,dy = B(n,m) \end{aligned}$$

■

2. **Trigonometric Form:** This is a very useful alternative definition for the Beta function.

$$B(m,n) = 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1}\theta \cos^{2n-1}\theta\,d\theta$$

Proof. This is derived by using the substitution $x = \sin^2\theta$ in the original definition. Then $dx = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta\,d\theta$.

$$\begin{aligned} B(m,n) &= \int_0^{\pi/2} (\sin^2\theta)^{m-1}(1-\sin^2\theta)^{n-1}(2\sin\theta\cos\theta)\,d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} (\sin\theta)^{2m-2}(\cos^2\theta)^{n-1}(2\sin\theta\cos\theta)\,d\theta \\ &= 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1}\theta\cos^{2n-1}\theta\,d\theta \end{aligned}$$

■

3. **Other Integral Forms:** Other useful integral representations include:

$$B(m,n) = \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{m-1}}{(1+t)^{m+n}}\,dt \quad (\text{by substituting } x = \frac{t}{1+t})$$

Theorem 6.1

For $m > 0$ and $n > 0$, the Beta function and Gamma function are related by:

$$B(m,n) = \frac{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)}{\Gamma(m+n)}$$

Proof. We begin with the definitions of the Gamma function.

$$\Gamma(m) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{m-1}\,dx \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma(n) = \int_0^\infty e^{-y}y^{n-1}\,dy$$

Note that we use different variables of integration (x and y) for clarity; the value of the definite integral does not depend on the variable used.

We consider the product of these two Gamma functions:

$$\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) = \left(\int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{m-1}\,dx\right)\left(\int_0^\infty e^{-y}y^{n-1}\,dy\right)$$

We can write this product as a double integral over the first quadrant of the xy-plane:

$$\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) = \int_0^\infty \int_0^\infty e^{-(x+y)}x^{m-1}y^{n-1}\,dx\,dy$$

Now, we perform a change of variables. Let $x = uv$. To simplify the exponential term $e^{-(x+y)}$, a natural choice for a second substitution is $x + y = u$. From this, we have $y = u - x = u - uv = u(1-v)$. So our transformation is:

$$x = uv \quad \text{and} \quad y = u(1-v)$$

We must compute the Jacobian of this transformation to change the differential area element $dx\,dy$.

$$J = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial v} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} v & u \\ 1-v & -u \end{vmatrix} = (v)(-u) - (u)(1-v) = -uv - u + uv = -u$$

The differential element becomes $dx\,dy = |J|\,du\,dv = |-u|\,du\,dv = u\,du\,dv$ (since $u = x + y$ and $x, y > 0$, u is positive).

Next, we must determine the new limits of integration for u and v. Since $x = uv$ and $y = u(1-v)$, and we know $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$, it follows that $u \geq 0$, $v \geq 0$, and $1 - v \geq 0$, which implies $0 \leq v \leq 1$. The variable $u = x + y$ ranges from 0 to ∞. So the region of integration in the uv-plane is $0 \leq u < \infty$ and $0 \leq v \leq 1$.

Now we substitute everything into the double integral:

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) &= \int_0^1 \int_0^\infty e^{-u}(uv)^{m-1}(u(1-v))^{n-1}(u\,du\,dv) \\ &= \int_0^1 \int_0^\infty e^{-u}u^{m-1}v^{m-1}u^{n-1}(1-v)^{n-1}u\,du\,dv \end{aligned}$$

We can group the terms involving u and the terms involving v:

$$\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) = \int_0^1 \int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{(m-1)+(n-1)+1} v^{m-1} (1-v)^{n-1} \, du \, dv$$

$$\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) = \int_0^1 \int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{m+n-1} v^{m-1} (1-v)^{n-1} \, du \, dv$$

Since the limits of integration for u and v are constant, we can separate the double integral into a product of two single integrals:

$$\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) = \left(\int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{m+n-1} \, du \right) \left(\int_0^1 v^{m-1} (1-v)^{n-1} \, dv \right)$$

We recognize both of these integrals. The first integral is, by definition, the Gamma function evaluated at $m+n$.

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-u} u^{m+n-1} \, du = \Gamma(m+n)$$

The second integral is, by definition, the Beta function evaluated at m and n.

$$\int_0^1 v^{m-1} (1-v)^{n-1} \, dv = B(m,n)$$

Substituting these back into our equation, we get:

$$\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n) = \Gamma(m+n) \cdot B(m,n)$$

Rearranging this equation to solve for $B(m,n)$ gives the desired result:

$$B(m,n) = \frac{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)}{\Gamma(m+n)}$$

This completes the proof. ■

Example 6.9

Evaluate $\int_0^1 x^4 (1-x)^3 \, dx$.

Proof. We compare the integral with the definition of the Beta function, $B(m,n) = \int_0^1 x^{m-1}(1-x)^{n-1} \, dx$. By matching the exponents, we have $m-1=4 \implies m=5$ and $n-1=3 \implies n=4$. Therefore, the integral is equal to $B(5,4)$. We evaluate this using the Beta-Gamma relation.

$$B(5,4) = \frac{\Gamma(5)\Gamma(4)}{\Gamma(5+4)} = \frac{\Gamma(5)\Gamma(4)}{\Gamma(9)}$$

Using the factorial property $\Gamma(k+1) = k!$:

$$B(5,4) = \frac{4! \cdot 3!}{8!} = \frac{(24)(6)}{40320} = \frac{144}{40320} = \frac{1}{280}$$

■

Example 6.10

Evaluate $B(3, 5/2)$.

Proof. We use the Beta-Gamma relation: $B(3, 5/2) = \frac{\Gamma(3)\Gamma(5/2)}{\Gamma(3 + 5/2)} = \frac{\Gamma(3)\Gamma(5/2)}{\Gamma(11/2)}$. We evaluate each Gamma function term. $\Gamma(3) = 2! = 2$. $\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{3}{2}\Gamma(3/2) = \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$. $\Gamma(11/2) = \frac{9}{2}\frac{7}{2}\frac{5}{2}\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{315}{8}\Gamma(5/2)$. Substituting these into the expression:

$$B(3, 5/2) = \frac{2 \cdot \Gamma(5/2)}{\frac{315}{8}\Gamma(5/2)} = \frac{2}{315/8} = \frac{16}{315}$$

■

Example 6.11

Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6\theta \cos^4\theta \, d\theta$.

Proof. We compare this with the trigonometric form of the Beta function, $\frac{1}{2}B(m, n) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1}\theta \cos^{2n-1}\theta \, d\theta$. Matching the exponents: $2m - 1 = 6 \implies 2m = 7 \implies m = 7/2$. $2n - 1 = 4 \implies 2n = 5 \implies n = 5/2$. The integral is equal to $\frac{1}{2}B(7/2, 5/2)$.

$$\frac{1}{2}B(7/2, 5/2) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma(7/2)\Gamma(5/2)}{\Gamma(7/2 + 5/2)} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma(7/2)\Gamma(5/2)}{\Gamma(6)}$$

We evaluate the Gamma functions: $\Gamma(6) = 5! = 120$, $\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$, and $\Gamma(7/2) = \frac{5}{2}\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{8}$. Therefore,

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6\theta \cos^4\theta \, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}B(7/2, 5/2) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma(7/2)\Gamma(5/2)}{\Gamma(6)} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{(\frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{8})(\frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4})}{120} = \frac{3\pi}{512}$$

■

Example 6.12

Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\tan\theta} \, d\theta$.

Proof. We rewrite the integral in terms of sine and cosine: $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{1/2}\theta \cos^{-1/2}\theta \, d\theta$. This matches the trigonometric form of the Beta function. We set the exponents equal to $2m - 1$ and $2n - 1$. $2m - 1 = 1/2 \implies 2m = 3/2 \implies m = 3/4$. $2n - 1 = -1/2 \implies 2n = 1/2 \implies n = 1/4$. The integral is equal to $\frac{1}{2}B(3/4, 1/4)$.

$$\frac{1}{2}B\left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{4}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma(3/4)\Gamma(1/4)}{\Gamma(3/4 + 1/4)} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma(3/4)\Gamma(1/4)}{\Gamma(1)}$$

Since $\Gamma(1) = 1$, we have $\frac{1}{2}\Gamma(3/4)\Gamma(1/4)$. Using Euler's reflection formula, $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi z)}$, with $z = 1/4$:

$$\Gamma(1/4)\Gamma(3/4) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi/4)} = \frac{\pi}{1/\sqrt{2}} = \pi\sqrt{2}$$

Therefore, the value of the integral is $\frac{1}{2}(\pi\sqrt{2}) = \frac{\pi\sqrt{2}}{2}$. ■

Example 6.13

Show that $\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^4}} = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(1/4)}{4\Gamma(3/4)}$.

Proof. We use a substitution to bring the integral into the Beta function form. Let $t = x^4$, so $x = t^{1/4}$ and $dx = \frac{1}{4}t^{-3/4}\,dt$. The limits of integration remain 0 to 1.

$$\int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-t}}\left(\frac{1}{4}t^{-3/4}\,dt\right) = \frac{1}{4}\int_0^1 t^{-3/4}(1-t)^{-1/2}\,dt$$

This integral is in the form $\frac{1}{4}\int_0^1 t^{m-1}(1-t)^{n-1}\,dt$. We have $m-1 = -3/4 \implies m = 1/4$ and $n-1 = -1/2 \implies n = 1/2$. The integral is $\frac{1}{4}B(1/4, 1/2)$. Using the Beta-Gamma relation:

$$\frac{1}{4}B\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\Gamma(1/4)\Gamma(1/2)}{\Gamma(1/4+1/2)} = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\Gamma(1/4)\sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma(3/4)} = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(1/4)}{4\Gamma(3/4)}$$

■

Example 6.14

Evaluate the integral $\int_0^2 \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{2-x}}\,dx$.

Proof. We need the limits to be from 0 to 1. Let $x = 2t$, so $dx = 2\,dt$. The limits change from $x = 0 \to t = 0$ and $x = 2 \to t = 1$.

$$\int_0^1 \frac{(2t)^2}{\sqrt{2-2t}}(2\,dt) = \int_0^1 \frac{4t^2}{\sqrt{2}\sqrt{1-t}}(2\,dt) = \frac{8}{\sqrt{2}}\int_0^1 t^2(1-t)^{-1/2}\,dt = 4\sqrt{2}\int_0^1 t^2(1-t)^{-1/2}\,dt$$

This is in the Beta function form with $m-1 = 2 \implies m = 3$ and $n-1 = -1/2 \implies n = 1/2$. The integral is $4\sqrt{2}\cdot B(3, 1/2)$.

$$4\sqrt{2}\frac{\Gamma(3)\Gamma(1/2)}{\Gamma(3+1/2)} = 4\sqrt{2}\frac{2!\sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma(7/2)} = 4\sqrt{2}\frac{2\sqrt{\pi}}{15\sqrt{\pi}/8} = 8\sqrt{2}\sqrt{\pi}\cdot\frac{8}{15\sqrt{\pi}} = \frac{64\sqrt{2}}{15}$$

■

Example 6.15

Evaluate $\int_0^\infty \frac{x^3}{(1+x)^5}\,dx$.

Proof. We use the alternative integral form of the Beta function: $B(m,n) = \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{m-1}}{(1+t)^{m+n}}\,dt$. By comparing the exponents, we have $m-1=3 \implies m=4$. And $m+n=5 \implies 4+n=5 \implies n=1$. The integral is equal to $B(4,1)$.

$$B(4,1) = \frac{\Gamma(4)\Gamma(1)}{\Gamma(4+1)} = \frac{3!\cdot 0!}{4!} = \frac{6\cdot 1}{24} = \frac{1}{4}$$

(Recall $\Gamma(1) = 0! = 1$). ■

Example 6.16

Show that $\Gamma(n) = \int_0^1 (\ln\frac{1}{x})^{n-1}\,dx$.

Proof. We start with the definition of the Gamma function, $\Gamma(n) = \int_0^\infty e^{-t}t^{n-1}\,dt$. Let's use the substitution $t = \ln(1/x) = -\ln x$. This implies $x = e^{-t}$. Differentiating gives $dx = -e^{-t}\,dt$. We must also change the limits of integration. When $t\to\infty$, $x = e^{-\infty}\to 0$. When $t=0$, $x = e^0 = 1$. Substituting into the integral definition:

$$\Gamma(n) = \int_1^0 t^{n-1}(-dx/dt)dt = \int_1^0 (\ln\frac{1}{x})^{n-1}(-dx) = \int_0^1 (\ln\frac{1}{x})^{n-1}\,dx$$

This establishes the identity. ■

6.2 Various Relations Between the Beta and Gamma Functions

The Beta function $B(m,n)$ and the Gamma function $\Gamma(n)$, also known as the Euler integrals of the first and second kind respectively, are deeply interconnected. Their relationships are not only elegant but also immensely practical, providing powerful tools for evaluating a wide range of definite integrals that are otherwise intractable. This document explores the most fundamental of these relations.

6.2.1 The Primary Relation

The most important relationship connects the Beta function directly to the Gamma function, allowing the Beta integral (over a finite range) to be expressed using Gamma values.

The Beta-Gamma Relation

For any real numbers $m>0$ and $n>0$:

$$B(m,n) = \frac{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)}{\Gamma(m+n)}$$

Significance

This identity is the cornerstone of almost all practical applications involving the Beta function. It allows us to compute $B(m,n)$ without performing the integration $\int_0^1 x^{m-1}(1-x)^{n-1}dx$, provided we can evaluate the Gamma functions. Since the Gamma function generalizes the factorial ($\Gamma(k+1) = k!$), this formula is particularly powerful when m and n are integers or half-integers. For instance, $B(3,4) = \frac{\Gamma(3)\Gamma(4)}{\Gamma(7)} = \frac{2!\cdot 3!}{6!} = \frac{2\cdot 6}{720} = \frac{1}{60}$.

Example 6.17

Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 x^5(1-x^4)^3\,dx$.

Proof. This integral is not yet in the standard Beta function form. We use the substitution $t = x^4$, which implies $x = t^{1/4}$ and $dx = \frac{1}{4}t^{-3/4}\,dt$. The limits of integration remain 0 to 1. The integral transforms to:

$$\int_0^1 (t^{1/4})^5(1-t)^3\left(\frac{1}{4}t^{-3/4}\,dt\right) = \frac{1}{4}\int_0^1 t^{5/4}(1-t)^3t^{-3/4}\,dt = \frac{1}{4}\int_0^1 t^{1/2}(1-t)^3\,dt$$

This is now in the Beta function form $\frac{1}{4}\int_0^1 t^{m-1}(1-t)^{n-1}\,dt$. By comparing exponents, we have $m-1 = 1/2 \implies m = 3/2$ and $n-1 = 3 \implies n = 4$. The integral is $\frac{1}{4}B(3/2,4)$. We evaluate this using the Gamma function relation.

$$\frac{1}{4}B\left(\frac{3}{2},4\right) = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\Gamma(3/2)\Gamma(4)}{\Gamma(3/2+4)} = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\Gamma(3/2)\cdot 3!}{\Gamma(11/2)}$$

We know $\Gamma(11/2) = \frac{9}{2}\frac{7}{2}\frac{5}{2}\Gamma(3/2)$. Substituting this:

$$\frac{1}{4}\frac{\Gamma(3/2)\cdot 6}{\frac{945}{8}\Gamma(3/2)} = \frac{1}{4}\cdot 6\cdot\frac{8}{945} = \frac{48}{3780} = \frac{4}{315}$$

■

Example 6.18

Evaluate $\int_0^2 \frac{x}{\sqrt{2-x}}\,dx$.

Proof. To transform the limits to $[0,1]$, we let $x = 2t$, so $dx = 2\,dt$. The new limits are 0 to 1.

$$\int_0^1 \frac{2t}{\sqrt{2-2t}}(2\,dt) = \int_0^1 \frac{4t}{\sqrt{2}\sqrt{1-t}}\,dt = \frac{4}{\sqrt{2}}\int_0^1 t^1(1-t)^{-1/2}\,dt = 2\sqrt{2}\int_0^1 t^{2-1}(1-t)^{1/2-1}\,dt$$

This is $2\sqrt{2}\cdot B(2,1/2)$. Using the Beta-Gamma relation:

$$2\sqrt{2}\cdot B\left(2,\frac{1}{2}\right) = 2\sqrt{2}\frac{\Gamma(2)\Gamma(1/2)}{\Gamma(2+1/2)} = 2\sqrt{2}\frac{1!\cdot\sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma(5/2)}$$

Since $\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{3}{2}\Gamma(3/2) = \frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$, we have:

$$2\sqrt{2}\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{3\sqrt{\pi}/4} = 2\sqrt{2} \cdot \frac{4}{3} = \frac{8\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

■

6.2.2 The Trigonometric Relation

A very useful alternative form for the Beta function is its trigonometric representation. This form is often used to evaluate definite integrals of products of powers of sine and cosine.

The Trigonometric Form

For $m > 0$ and $n > 0$, the Beta function can be expressed as:

$$B(m, n) = 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1}\theta \cos^{2n-1}\theta \, d\theta$$

Connecting to the Gamma Function

By combining this trigonometric form with the primary relation, we arrive at a celebrated formula for evaluating a whole class of definite integrals. Rearranging the formula above gives:

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1}\theta \cos^{2n-1}\theta \, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}B(m, n) = \frac{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)}{2\Gamma(m+n)}$$

To make the exponents more intuitive, let $p = 2m - 1$ and $q = 2n - 1$. This implies $m = \frac{p+1}{2}$ and $n = \frac{q+1}{2}$. Substituting these gives the result in its most common form.

Example 6.19

Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^5 x \, dx$.

Proof. This is an application of the trigonometric formula where the power of cosine is zero. We have $p = 5$ and $q = 0$.

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^5 x \cos^0 x \, dx = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{5+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{0+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{5+0+2}{2}\right)} = \frac{\Gamma(3)\Gamma(1/2)}{2\Gamma(7/2)}$$

We evaluate the Gamma functions: $\Gamma(3) = 2! = 2, \Gamma(1/2) = \sqrt{\pi}$, and $\Gamma(7/2) = \frac{5}{2}\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{8}$.

$$\frac{2 \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{2 \cdot (15\sqrt{\pi}/8)} = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{15\sqrt{\pi}/8} = \frac{8}{15}$$

■

Example 6.20

Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4(2\theta)\, d\theta$.

Proof. The argument of sine is 2θ, not θ. We must first perform a substitution. Let $x = 2\theta$, so $d\theta = dx/2$. The limits change from $\theta = 0 \to x = 0$ and $\theta = \pi/2 \to x = \pi$.

$$\int_0^{\pi} \sin^4 x \left(\frac{dx}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi} \sin^4 x\, dx$$

The integrand $\sin^4 x$ is an even function around $x = \pi/2$ on the interval $[0, \pi]$. Therefore, $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^4 x\, dx = 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 x\, dx$. Our integral becomes $\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 x\, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 x\, dx$. Now we apply the Gamma function formula with $p = 4$ and $q = 0$.

$$\frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{4+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{0+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{4+0+2}{2}\right)} = \frac{\Gamma(5/2)\Gamma(1/2)}{2\Gamma(3)}$$

We have $\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$, $\Gamma(1/2) = \sqrt{\pi}$, and $\Gamma(3) = 2! = 2$.

$$\frac{(\frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4})(\sqrt{\pi})}{2(2)} = \frac{3\pi/4}{4} = \frac{3\pi}{16}$$

■

The Gamma Function Integral for Sine-Cosine Products

For $p > -1$ and $q > -1$:

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^p \theta \cos^q \theta\, d\theta = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{q+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{p+q+2}{2}\right)}$$

This formula is extremely powerful. For example, it directly leads to Wallis's formulas for integrals of $\sin^p x$ or $\cos^q x$ by setting $q = 0$ or $p = 0$.

Example 6.21

Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6 x \cos^4 x\, dx$.

Proof. This is a direct application of the formula with $p = 6$ and $q = 4$.

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6 x \cos^4 x\, dx = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{6+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{4+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{6+4+2}{2}\right)} = \frac{\Gamma(7/2)\Gamma(5/2)}{2\Gamma(6)}$$

We evaluate the Gamma functions:

- $\Gamma(6) = 5! = 120$

✿ $\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$

✿ $\Gamma(7/2) = \frac{5}{2}\Gamma(5/2) = \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4} = \frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{8}$

Substituting these values into the expression:

$$\frac{\left(\frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{8}\right)\left(\frac{3\sqrt{\pi}}{4}\right)}{2(120)} = \frac{45\pi/32}{240} = \frac{45\pi}{32 \cdot 240} = \frac{\pi}{32} \cdot \frac{45}{240} = \frac{\pi}{32} \cdot \frac{3}{16} = \frac{3\pi}{512}$$

■

Example 6.22

Find the area of the astroid $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$ using Gamma functions.

Proof. The area of a region can be calculated by the line integral $A = \frac{1}{2}\oint_C (x\,dy - y\,dx)$. The parametric equations for the astroid are $x = a\cos^3 t, y = a\sin^3 t$, for $t \in [0, 2\pi]$. We find $dx = -3a\cos^2 t \sin t\,dt$ and $dy = 3a\sin^2 t\cos t\,dt$. Substituting these into the line integral formula:

$$\begin{aligned} x\,dy - y\,dx &= (a\cos^3 t)(3a\sin^2 t\cos t) - (a\sin^3 t)(-3a\cos^2 t\sin t)\,dt \\ &= (3a^2\cos^4 t\sin^2 t + 3a^2\sin^4 t\cos^2 t)\,dt \\ &= 3a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t(\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t)\,dt = 3a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t\,dt \end{aligned}$$

The area is $A = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} 3a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t\,dt$. Due to symmetry, this is $\frac{1}{2}\cdot 4\int_0^{\pi/2} 3a^2\sin^2 t\cos^2 t\,dt = 6a^2\int_0^{\pi/2}\sin^2 t\cos^2 t\,dt$. We use the Gamma formula with $p = 2, q = 2$.

$$A = 6a^2\left(\frac{\Gamma(\frac{2+1}{2})\Gamma(\frac{2+1}{2})}{2\Gamma(\frac{2+2+2}{2})}\right) = 6a^2\left(\frac{\Gamma(3/2)\Gamma(3/2)}{2\Gamma(3)}\right)$$

Since $\Gamma(3/2) = \frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$ and $\Gamma(3) = 2! = 2$, we have:

$$A = 6a^2\left(\frac{(\sqrt{\pi}/2)(\sqrt{\pi}/2)}{2(2)}\right) = 6a^2\left(\frac{\pi/4}{4}\right) = 6a^2\frac{\pi}{16} = \frac{3\pi a^2}{8}$$

■

6.2.3 Euler's Reflection Formula

This remarkable identity provides a relationship for the Gamma function at non-integer values, connecting it to the sine function. While it is a property of the Gamma function alone, its proof often involves the Beta function, highlighting their deep connection.

Euler's Reflection Formula

For non-integer values of z, where $0 < z < 1$:

$$\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi z)}$$

Proof Sketch via the Beta Function

The proof demonstrates the interplay between the functions. We start with $B(z, 1-z)$. Using the primary relation:

$$B(z, 1-z) = \frac{\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z)}{\Gamma(z+1-z)} = \frac{\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z)}{\Gamma(1)} = \Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z)$$

Now, we use a different integral representation for the Beta function:

$$B(m, n) = \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{m-1}}{1+t}\,dt \quad \text{(This is another standard identity)}$$

With $m = z$ and $n = 1-z$, this becomes:

$$B(z, 1-z) = \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{z-1}}{1+t}\,dt$$

It is a known result from complex analysis (using residue theory) that this integral evaluates to $\frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi z)}$. Equating the two expressions for $B(z, 1-z)$ gives the reflection formula. This result is famous for providing an analytical continuation of the factorial function. For example, it confirms our value for $\Gamma(1/2)$:

$$\Gamma(1/2)\Gamma(1-1/2) = (\Gamma(1/2))^2 = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi/2)} = \pi \implies \Gamma(1/2) = \sqrt{\pi}$$

Example 6.23

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{x^{-1/3}}{1+x}\,dx$.

Proof. This integral matches the standard form $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{t^{z-1}}{1+t}\,dt$, which is known to be equal to $B(z, 1-z)$ and, by the reflection formula, also equal to $\frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi z)}$. By comparing the exponents, we have $z - 1 = -1/3$, which gives $z = 2/3$. Since $0 < 2/3 < 1$, the formula applies. The value of the integral is:

$$\frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi \cdot 2/3)} = \frac{\pi}{\sin(2\pi/3)} = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{3}/2} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$$

■

Example 6.24

Evaluate $\Gamma(1/6)\Gamma(5/6)$.

Proof. This is a direct application of the reflection formula, $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi z)}$. We let $z = 1/6$. Then $1 - z = 1 - 1/6 = 5/6$. The expression matches the formula perfectly.

$$\Gamma(1/6)\Gamma(5/6) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi/6)}$$

Since $\sin(\pi/6) = 1/2$, the result is:

$$\frac{\pi}{1/2} = 2\pi$$

■

6.2.4 The Duplication Formula (Legendre's Formula)

Another important identity, which can be derived from the Beta-Gamma relation, is Legendre's duplication formula.

Legendre's Duplication Formula

For any $z > 0$:

$$\Gamma(z)\Gamma\left(z + \frac{1}{2}\right) = 2^{1-2z}\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(2z)$$

This formula relates the value of the Gamma function at a point z to its value at $2z$, and its proof often begins by considering the special Beta function $B(z, z)$.

In conclusion, the relationships between the Beta and Gamma functions provide a rich and powerful framework, transforming difficult definite integrals into algebraic manipulations of factorials and constants like π.

Example 6.25

Verify Legendre's duplication formula for $z = 3/2$.

Proof. We will evaluate both sides of the formula independently for $z = 3/2$. **Left-Hand Side (LHS):**

$$\text{LHS} = \Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)\Gamma(2)$$

We know $\Gamma(3/2) = \frac{1}{2}\Gamma(1/2) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$ and $\Gamma(2) = 1! = 1$.

$$\text{LHS} = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} \cdot 1 = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$$

Right-Hand Side (RHS):

$$\text{RHS} = 2^{1-2(3/2)}\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(2 \cdot 3/2) = 2^{1-3}\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(3) = 2^{-2}\sqrt{\pi}\,(2!) = \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{\pi}(2) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$$

Since LHS = RHS, the formula is verified for $z = 3/2$. ■

Example 6.26

Calculate the value of $\Gamma(1/4)\Gamma(3/4)$ using both the Reflection and Duplication formulas to show consistency.

Proof. **Method 1: Using the Reflection Formula** Euler's reflection formula is $\Gamma(z)\Gamma(1-z) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi z)}$. Letting $z = 1/4$, we have $1 - z = 3/4$. The formula applies directly:

$$\Gamma(1/4)\Gamma(3/4) = \frac{\pi}{\sin(\pi/4)} = \frac{\pi}{1/\sqrt{2}} = \pi\sqrt{2}$$

Method 2: Using the Duplication Formula This method is more complex but demonstrates the power of the formula. We set $z = 1/4$ in Legendre's formula:

$$\Gamma(1/4)\Gamma(1/4 + 1/2) = 2^{1-2(1/4)}\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(2 \cdot 1/4)$$

$$\Gamma(1/4)\Gamma(3/4) = 2^{1/2}\sqrt{\pi}\,\Gamma(1/2) = \sqrt{2}\sqrt{\pi}\sqrt{\pi} = \sqrt{2}\pi$$

Both methods yield the same result, $\pi\sqrt{2}$, demonstrating the consistency of the Gamma function identities. ■

Exercise 6.1

Solve the following problems using the definitions, properties, and relations of the Beta and Gamma functions.

1. Evaluate $\Gamma(6)$.
2. Evaluate $\Gamma(9/2)$ in terms of $\sqrt{\pi}$.
3. Use the recurrence relation to find the value of $\Gamma(-3/2)$.
4. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^\infty x^5 e^{-x}\, dx$.
5. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^\infty x^6 e^{-2x}\, dx$.
6. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^\infty \sqrt{y}\, e^{-y^3}\, dy$. (Hint: Let $t = y^3$).
7. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 \left(\ln \frac{1}{x}\right)^3 dx$.
8. Evaluate $B(5, 3)$ using the Beta-Gamma relation.
9. Evaluate $B(7/2, 5/2)$ in terms of π.
10. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 x^6(1-x)^4\, dx$.
11. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^2 x(8-x^3)^{1/3}\, dx$. (Hint: Let $x^3 = 8t$).
12. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^4 x^2\sqrt{4-x}\, dx$. (Hint: Let $x = 4t$).
13. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^\infty \frac{x^2}{(1+x)^6}\, dx$.

14. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^7\theta \cos^5\theta \, d\theta$.
15. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^8\theta \, d\theta$.
16. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6\theta \, d\theta$.
17. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\sin\theta} \, d\theta$. Express your answer in terms of Gamma functions.
18. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \tan^3\theta \, d\theta$ using Gamma functions.
19. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{\pi} \cos^4\theta \, d\theta$. (Hint: Use symmetry).
20. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^8\theta \, d\theta$.
21. Use Euler's Reflection Formula to find the value of $\Gamma(1/3)\Gamma(2/3)$.
22. Use Euler's Reflection Formula to find the value of $\Gamma(1/6)\Gamma(5/6)$.
23. Use Legendre's Duplication Formula to express $\Gamma(4)$ in terms of $\Gamma(2)$. Verify the result directly.
24. Show that $\Gamma(1/4) = 2^{1/4}(\sqrt{\pi})^{1/2}\dfrac{\Gamma(1/2)}{\Gamma(3/4)}$.
25. Prove the property $B(m, n+1) = \dfrac{n}{m+n}B(m,n)$.
26. Show that $B(m,m) = 2^{1-2m}B(m, 1/2)$. (Hint: Use the trigonometric form and a substitution).
27. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^3}}$ in terms of Beta and Gamma functions. (Hint: Let $t = x^3$).
28. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^1 \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt[4]{1-x^4}}$.
29. Evaluate the integral $\int_0^a y^4\sqrt{a^2-y^2}\, dy$. (Hint: Let $y = a\sin\theta$).
30. Show that the integral $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\tan\theta}\, d\theta = \dfrac{\pi}{\sqrt{2}}$.

A Final Note: The Journey Ahead

As we conclude this course, we reflect on a journey that has taken us from the foundational techniques of integration to the elegant world of special functions and differential equations.

We began in **Unit I** by building a robust toolkit for integration, mastering advanced methods like partial fractions and specialized substitutions to handle a wide variety of rational and irrational functions. This was followed by **Unit II**, where the powerful and recursive nature of reduction formulae allowed us to systematically tackle integrals of high-powered trigonometric functions.

In **Unit III**, our focus shifted from the "how" to the "why" and "what for." We explored the theoretical underpinnings of the definite integral as a limit of a sum and celebrated its profound connection to differentiation through the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. This theoretical power was immediately put to use in rectifying curves, a beautiful application of the integral's summing nature. This culminated in **Unit IV**, where we fully unleashed the integral's geometric potential, moving from one-dimensional lengths to two-dimensional areas (quadrature) and finally to three-dimensional volumes and surface areas of solids of revolution.

The final part of our journey introduced us to new mathematical landscapes. In **Unit V**, we took our first steps into the vast and critical field of differential equations, learning to solve first and second-order linear equations that form the bedrock of mathematical modeling in science and engineering. Finally, in **Unit VI**, we were introduced to the elegance of the Beta and Gamma functions, a glimpse into the world of special functions that generalize familiar concepts like the factorial and provide powerful, non-obvious tools for solving a new class of definite integrals.

The skills and concepts you have mastered here—from rigorous technique to geometric intuition—are more than just a conclusion. They are the foundation for the next stage of your mathematical journey. The worlds of multivariable calculus, complex analysis, advanced differential equations, and mathematical physics all build directly upon the principles of integration and the analytical thinking you have honed in this course. The journey ahead is rich with new challenges and deeper understanding, and you are now well-equipped to embark upon it.